

# **My Dog Grooming Guide**

## **2<sup>nd</sup> Edition**

Produced By:

***G. Constantine Tannous***

Edited By:

***Michelle Gillette 1<sup>st</sup> Edition***  
***Breanna Martuicc 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition***

**Wag-On Publishing House**

Http://www.Wag-On.net

First Edition July – 2010

Published in the United States of America

Copyright © July - 2010 All Rights Reserved

No Copying or Reproduction of This Entire Book, or any Part Thereof, is Allowed

Without the Written Permission of the Publisher

Global Rights Reserved!



**If you just purchased this book, you are welcome to sign up at**  
***www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com* and watch FREE grooming videos.**

---

---

## Table of Contents

---

---

<b>Table of Contents</b>	ii	<b>Bulldog</b>	96
<b>Tools &amp; What is Needed</b>	iv	<b>Bullmastiff</b>	98
<b>Introduction</b>	v	<b>Cairn Terrier</b>	100
<b>Know Your Dog</b>	vi	<b>Canaan Dog</b>	104
<b>The Basics of Bathing &amp; Grooming</b>	vii	<b>Cardigan Welsh Corgi</b>	106
<b>Breeds</b>	1	<b>Cavalier King Charles Spaniel</b>	108
<b>Affenpicher</b>	2	<b>Chesapeake Bay Retriever</b>	112
<b>Afghan Hound</b>	6	<b>Chihuahua</b>	114
<b>Airedale Terrier</b>	8	<b>Chinese Crested</b>	118
<b>Akita</b>	12	<b>Chinese Shar-Pei</b>	120
<b>Alaskan Malamute</b>	14	<b>Chow Chow</b>	122
<b>American Eskimo</b>	16	<b>Clumber Spaniel</b>	126
<b>American Staffordshire Terrier</b>	18	<b>Cocker Spaniel</b>	130
<b>American Water Spaniel</b>	20	<b>Collie</b>	134
<b>Anatolian Shepherd Dog</b>	22	<b>Coonhound (Black &amp; Tan)</b>	140
<b>Australian Cattle Dog</b>	24	<b>Curly-Coated Retriever</b>	142
<b>Australian Shepherd</b>	26	<b>Dachshund</b>	144
<b>Australian Terrier</b>	28	<b>Dalmatian</b>	146
<b>Basenji</b>	32	<b>Dandie Dinmont Terrier</b>	148
<b>Basset Hound</b>	34	<b>Doberman Pinscher</b>	152
<b>Beagle</b>	36	<b>English Cocker Spaniel</b>	154
<b>Bearded Collie</b>	38	<b>English Setter</b>	158
<b>Beauceron</b>	42	<b>English Springer Spaniel</b>	162
<b>Bedlington Terrier</b>	44	<b>English Toy Spaniel</b>	166
<b>Belgian Malinois</b>	48	<b>Field Spaniel</b>	170
<b>Belgian Sheepdog</b>	50	<b>Finnish Spitz</b>	174
<b>Belgian Tervuren</b>	52	<b>Flat-Coated Retriever</b>	176
<b>Bernese Mountain Dog</b>	54	<b>Fox Terrier</b>	178
<b>Bichon Frise</b>	56	<b>Foxhound American</b>	180
<b>Bloodhound</b>	60	<b>Foxhound English</b>	182
<b>Bluetick Coonhound</b>	62	<b>French Bull Dog</b>	184
<b>Border Collie</b>	64	<b>German Pinscher</b>	186
<b>Border Terrier</b>	66	<b>German Shepherd Dog</b>	188
<b>Borzoi</b>	70	<b>German Shorthaired Pointer</b>	190
<b>Boston Terrier</b>	72	<b>German Wirehaired Pointer</b>	192
<b>Bouvier Des Flandres</b>	74	<b>Glen of Imaal Terrier</b>	194
<b>Boxer</b>	78	<b>Golden Retriever</b>	198
<b>Boykin Spaniel</b>	80	<b>Gordon Setter</b>	200
<b>Briard</b>	82	<b>Great Dane</b>	204
<b>Brittany</b>	86	<b>Great Pyrennes</b>	206
<b>Brussels Griffon</b>	90	<b>Greater Swiss Mountain Dog</b>	208
<b>Bull Terrier</b>	94	<b>Greyhound</b>	210

*Table of Contents Continued:*

<b>Harrier</b>	212	<b>Pomeranian</b>	324
<b>Havanese</b>	214	<b>Poodle (Kennel, Puppy, Summer)</b>	326
<b>Ibizan Hound</b>	216	<b>Portuguese Water Dog &amp; Lion</b>	340
<b>Irish Red &amp; White Setter</b>	218	<b>Pug</b>	346
<b>Irish Setter</b>	222	<b>Puli</b>	348
<b>Irish Terrier</b>	226	<b>Pyrenean Shepherd</b>	352
<b>Irish Water Spaniel</b>	230	<b>Redbone Coonhound</b>	356
<b>Irish Wolfhound</b>	234	<b>Rhodesian Ridgeback</b>	358
<b>Italian Greyhound</b>	236	<b>Rottweiler</b>	360
<b>Jack Russell Terrier</b>	238	<b>Saint Bernard</b>	362
<b>Japanese Chin</b>	244	<b>Saluki</b>	364
<b>Keeshond</b>	246	<b>Samoyed</b>	366
<b>Kerry Blue Terrier</b>	248	<b>Schipperke</b>	368
<b>Komondor</b>	252	<b>Schnauzer</b>	372
<b>Kuvasz</b>	254	<b>Scottish Deerhound</b>	376
<b>Labrador Retriever</b>	256	<b>Scottish Terrier</b>	380
<b>Lakeland Terrier</b>	258	<b>Sealyham Terrier</b>	384
<b>Leonberger</b>	262	<b>Shetland Sheepdog</b>	388
<b>Lhasa Apso</b>	264	<b>Shiba Inu</b>	390
<b>Löwchen</b>	268	<b>Shih Tzu</b>	392
<b>Maltese</b>	272	<b>Siberian Husky</b>	396
<b>Manchester Terrier</b>	276	<b>Silky Terrier</b>	398
<b>Mastiff</b>	278	<b>Skye Terrier</b>	402
<b>Miniature Pinscher</b>	280	<b>Spinone Italiano</b>	406
<b>Newfoundland</b>	282	<b>Staffordshire Bull Terrier</b>	408
<b>Norfolk Terrier</b>	284	<b>Sussex Spaniel</b>	410
<b>Norwegian Buhund</b>	288	<b>Swedish Vallhund</b>	414
<b>Norwegian Elkhound</b>	290	<b>Tibetan Mastiff</b>	416
<b>Norwich Terrier</b>	292	<b>Tibetan Spaniel</b>	418
<b>Nova Scotia Duck Tolling Retriever</b>	294	<b>Tibetan Terrier</b>	420
<b>Old English Sheepdog</b>	296	<b>Toy Fox Terrier</b>	422
<b>Otterhound</b>	300	<b>Vizsla</b>	424
<b>Papillon</b>	304	<b>Weimaraner</b>	426
<b>Parson Russell Terrier</b>	306	<b>Welsh Springer Spaniel</b>	428
<b>Pekingese</b>	308	<b>Welsh Terrier</b>	432
<b>Pembroke Welsh Corgi</b>	310	<b>West Highland White Terrier</b>	436
<b>Petit Basset Griffon Vendeen</b>	312	<b>Wheaten Terrier</b>	440
<b>Pharaoh Hound</b>	314	<b>Whippet</b>	444
<b>Plott Hound</b>	316	<b>Wire Fox Terrier</b>	446
<b>Pointer</b>	318	<b>Wirehaired Pointing Griffon</b>	450
<b>Polish Lowland Sheepdog</b>	320	<b>Yorkshire Terrier</b>	452

## TOOLS OF THE TRADE

Following is our suggested grooming tools. These items can be purchased at [www.petedge.com](http://www.petedge.com). We have listed the item numbers for your convenience. The item numbers mentioned below and the prices are as of June 27, 2010.

AD22360 Andis 2 speed clipper \$135  
TP14217 value kit three shears 7 ½ straight and 8 ½ straight, and thinning shears \$90  
#DD00141 7 ½ curved shears \$60  
#WA878 cordless clipper \$125 (optional) Pink or Grey  
#TP244 box \$49.95  
#MF226 small slicker brush \$10.99  
#MF226 large slicker brush \$12.99  
#TP19133 flea comb \$2.99  
#TP25106 undercoat rake \$9.99  
#AD129 small clip on combs \$9.95  
#AD129 large clip on combs \$9.95  
#TP085 de matt tool \$4.99  
#TP085 fine/course comb \$9.99  
#MF1319 hemostat \$6.99  
#TP157 4 grooming loops \$8.00  
#AD64123 (2) 4fc blades \$22.00 each  
#AD64076 (1) 40 blade \$15.59  
#AD64075 (1) 30 blade \$15.59  
#AD64071 (1) 10 blade \$15.59  
#AD64090 (1) 4 skipped tooth \$ 21.29  
#AD64121 (2) 7fc blades \$17.29 each  
#AD64122 (2) 5fc blades \$18.99 each  
#OS86835 (1) 3fc blade \$28.29

We also recommend you purchase a grooming table with a grooming arm and a grooming loop, a forced dryer, the “Groomers Helper”, and shampoo and conditioner.



## INTRODUCTION

Wag My Tail pet grooming salon & School is widely viewed as one of Los Angeles' premiere pet grooming businesses due to its highly-successful business model. Wag My Tail opened its doors in August 2004 as a full - service pet salon providing head-to-toe spot treatments, pet hygiene and styling. In October 2005, Wag My Tail became a Registered Pet Grooming School ([www.WagMyTail.com](http://www.WagMyTail.com)) and in January 2010, it became the first federally-approved training facility under the Obama Administration to provide those who are out of work with a brand new career.

[OnlineGroomingSchool.com](http://OnlineGroomingSchool.com), Wag My Tail's virtual curriculum for training and certifying pet groomers provides an in-depth instructional program to students, aged 18 or older, using an online curriculum, instructional videos and DVDs. Students complete the interactive program by submitting documentation of completed grooming exercises and by passing a final test within the required testing score. Once a student successfully completes the course, they receive certification as a Pet Hygienist & a Certified Pet Groomer.

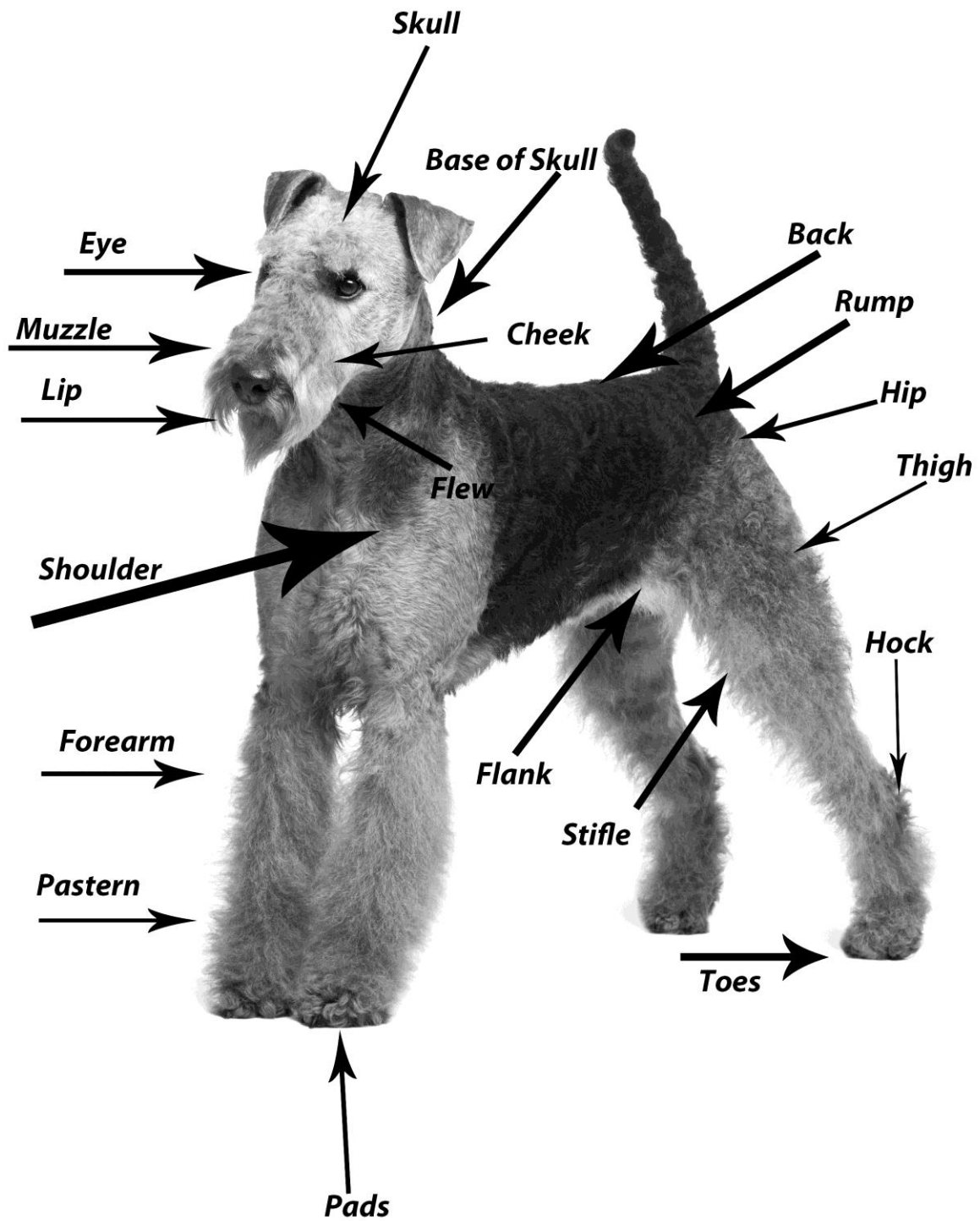
To assist graduates in starting their new career, Tannous invites graduates to call her if they have any questions. Her willingness to help others succeed in this highly-competitive industry is one of the qualities that have made her business a leader in the pet grooming trade. By teaching her students to treat animals with the same love, respect and compassion as people, she is making great strides in helping to elevate the quality of care for pets and pet owners worldwide through this new generation of pet grooming professionals.

We are hopeful that you will enjoy this grooming guide for years to come.

**Best of Luck,**

***MyDogGroomingGuide.com Team***

## Know your Dog



## THE BASICS OF BATHING AND GROOMING

\*Make Sure to See End of Chapter for Teddy Head Clip

1. **INTAKE/EXAMINATION:** You should always start with any animal you meet by checking with their owner for concerns such as allergies to shampoos. By asking this simply question, you will find out whether they require hypoallergenic shampoo. The client may have a preferred shampoo of their own that they want you to use. Check also to see what type of haircut is desired. Check for the age of the dog. Finally, check for anything that may require special attention, such as aggression, cage fright, prefers females, etc.

During the examination process you should feel for any noticeable mats in the pet's coat. If you find that the coat is heavily matted, then this would be the time to express it to the owner. Discuss what type of hairstyle is best for the pet. Most owners have an idea as to what they want their pet to look like. In some cases, it is impossible or inappropriate to give the pet a certain type of hairstyle because of the dog's age or coat condition.

Examine the ears of the pet. A foul-smelling ear discharge will be a good indication that the pet may have an infection. During the grooming process, the pet will put up plenty of resistance if you attempt to clean its ears. It is my opinion that if you do find that the pet has a possible ear infection, it would be best not to clean the ear in its entirety. By leaving some discharge in the ear, you will aid the veterinarian in properly diagnosing the problem.

Checking the pet's teeth is also a good idea. If the pet has tooth decay, it will be very painful for the pet if you attempt to shave around the muzzle. The mouth tissue is very tender and painful when this is the case. This is usually a problem in older pets.

If you notice anything on the pet such as moles, bald patches or injuries, mark them down on your examination card and ask the owner how it happened or if they know about the injuries. If you are the one taking in the pet and you are done filling out the card, ask the owner if there is anything else they may want you to be aware of.

Be cautious with any animal, if you are not the person who checked them in and you now have to retrieve them from a cage. Some dogs can experience cage fright. There is a technique in retrieving "cage fright dogs." It is also important that you are aware of any of the pet's physical ailments. For example, if he has a hip or back problem, you need to be more careful when handling him.

2. **PLUCK THE EAR HAIR OUT OF THE EAR IF BREED APPROPRIATE.**



Some breeds have more hair in their ears than others. In these cases you will remove the ear hair with a special ear powder that helps liquefy the ear hair. This medicated ear powder also aids the bather in grasping the hair. Most ear hair is covered with earwax and may be difficult to properly grasp without the powder. In these cases you will sprinkle the ear canal with the powder and with your fingers or hemostats you will quickly pull out tiny bits of hair.

How do you know if it is breed appropriate to remove hair? If the dog does not shed, it requires the ear hair to be removed. Examples of such breeds are Poodles, Bichons, Shih Tzus, Yorkies, and Lhasa Apsos.

If the pet sheds, such as a Cocker or Golden Retriever, it will require that you shave the inside ear leather with a #10 blade. Not all shedding breeds require this, for example, Pugs and German Shepherds do not.

Cleaning the ears is a very important step in the grooming process. It is important to identify what a healthy ear looks like versus an unhealthy ear.

- A healthy ear is dry and light pink with NO foul odor.
- An unhealthy ear is tender to the touch. They are usually dark red, swollen and moist.

Some pets may even seem to appear to have ear mites. Ear mites look like a dark reddish brown wax that resembles coffee grounds. Please note that even a veterinarian must examine the specimen under a scope before determining that the pet has ear mites. Nevertheless, if you suspect ear mites, treat it as such. You may still groom the pet, but make sure that you disinfect your tools prior to using them on another pet.

Remember, you cannot make a diagnosis, we can only make observations. If you suspect an infection, advise the client that it would be a good idea for a vet check and let the veterinarian make the diagnosis.

**3. CLEAN THE EARS WITH ANTISEPTIC SOLUTION.**

Gently take a cotton swab and apply ear cleaning solution to it then wipe away any dirt or wax on the ear leather or canal. Only go in as far as you can see.

**4. CLIP THE NAILS IF NEEDED.**

How do you know if you need to clip the nails? A good rule of thumb is if the nails are not touching the ground, don't clip them. The following pictures are good examples of nails that should be clipped.



To most new bathers and groomers, this is the most intimidating process of grooming a pet. In order to make the process a little less troublesome, there are special handling techniques, tools and diagrams to assist the bather or groomer in nail clipping.

Using the proper tools and handling techniques, start at the back legs and then work your way to the front legs. If the pet gets aggressive with you, you may, at this time, need to muzzle the pet or ask for assistance. Once you have finished clipping the nails then you may remove the muzzle.

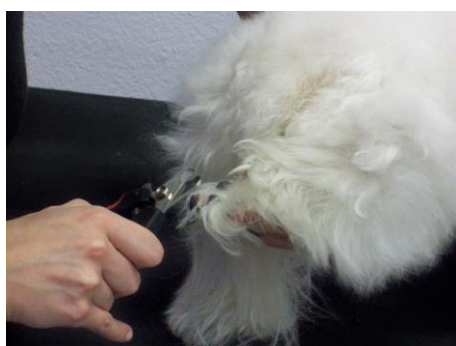
The following are techniques to handle a pet when clipping nails.



Front approach; arm over body.



Front approach; arm under body.



Back approach; arm over body.



Wrestler hold; one person holds while other clips nails.

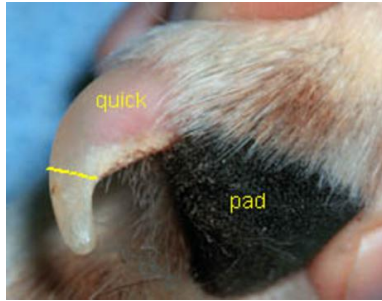
Not all the nails need clipping. Just clip the ones that need it. As a rule, the back nails are shorter than the front ones. Remember to always check the dew claw. This nail often gets missed and as a result, ingrown dew claws sometimes need to be surgically removed by a veterinarian.



Courtesy of [www.vetmed.wsu.edu](http://www.vetmed.wsu.edu)



**White Nail:** The easiest nails to clip are those with white nails. With white nails you can see where the quick begins. Only clip the small tip just under the quick.



Courtesy of [blog.luckydogbiscuits.com](http://blog.luckydogbiscuits.com)

**Black Nail:** With dark or black nails, you will need to estimate where the quick is. Usually three fourths of the nail is the quick. If you accidentally cut the quick you may use styptic powder (quick stop) to stop the bleeding.



Courtesy of [www.stjamesanimalhospital.com](http://www.stjamesanimalhospital.com)

Only use clippers that are designed to clip dog nails; do not use human nail clippers.

Always cut the nails before bathing so that if you accidentally cut the quick and it bleeds soiling the coat, it can be washed. Very rough or sharp nails should be filed after clipping.

There are times when it is easier to clip the nails in the tub after the pet has been bathed. This works particularly well if the pet has thick, brittle nails. The warm water will soften the nail, thereby keeping the nail from splitting when clipping. Another advantage to this is that some pets are more relaxed in the tub making the nail trimming less traumatic for them and you.

5. **DO THE SANITATION TRIM, ONLY ON CERTAIN BREEDS.**

The purpose of a sanitation trim is to keep the belly and private area clean of hair and debris. Sanitation trims are most popular for smaller breeds such as Shih Tzu, Maltese, Pomeranian, etc.

When doing the sanitation trim on the belly area, be sure to only use a #10 blade. This reduces the chances of clipper irritation, cuts and nicks. When doing the sanitation trim, shave against the grain. If the dog is prone to clipper irritation, then go with the grain.



Side approach; lifting the leg.



Front approach.

When doing the sanitation trim on the anal area, **DO NOT** put the blade directly on the anal area. Again only use a #10 blade.



Sanitation clip around anal area.



6. **SHAVE OFF ANY MATS THAT YOU ARE UNABLE TO BRUSH OUT PRIOR TO BATHING.**

It is better to shave out a mat before getting it wet. Once you add water to a mat, it makes it very difficult to remove. The best blades to remove a very tight mat are a #10 or a #7 skipped tooth (More on blade lengths later). Never use scissors to remove mats, especially around the ears. Only experienced groomers can attempt such a task and even then it is not recommended.

Some mats can be removed and taken apart with a detangler, cornstarch, hair splitters or mat breakers, slicker brush, and thinning shears. Only a mat that is very tight to the skin should be shaved off.

There will be times that no amount of dematting will remove mats. At this point, you will need to consider shaving all the hair off. Pulling and brushing the dog's coat will only cause him pain and anguish. "Humanity before vanity," we always say.

Before shaving the hair, it is a good idea to call the owner first. When you call the owner, explain to them that it is uncomfortable and painful for the dog and could only dampen his spirits if you continue to try and comb out the mats. Remind him that the dog's coat will be grown out in 8-10 weeks and that by brushing it regularly; the mats will not occur again.

7. **SHAVE THE HAIR ON THE V PADS, IF BREED APPROPRIATE.**



The V-pad on the bottom of all feet is easy to shave. Remember that there is a tiny tendon at the point of the V. Be careful not to nick the tendon.

Dogs such as Golden Retrievers and Cocker Spaniels grow excessive amounts of hair on their pads. There are times when you may find gum or other debris attached to the hair. If the hair is left unattended, it could lead to infection and pain when walking.

Shaving the pads prior to bathing is a good habit to get into.

- a. First, select the proper blade. I like to use a #40 blade. Do not use anything lower than a #10 blade.
- b. Locate the V on the underside of the pet's paw.
- c. Shave the lower side of the pads to give it a clean foot.



#### **8. SHAVING THE POODLE FOOT.**

Poodles should have their feet completely shaved. Some Poodles owners do not like this look. The following are the steps that should be taken.

- a. Shave the V Pad.
- b. Shave the top of the foot from the toes to where the foot joins the leg.
- c. Shave in-between each individual toe. Be sure to spread the toes apart.
- d. Be careful not to catch the webbing between the toes when shaving. Only use the corner of the blade when shaving this area.

#### **9. SHAVING THE ENTIRE COAT.**

There will be times when you will need to shave a dog prior to bathing him. There is no need to wash a coat that will be shaved short anyway. In addition, a dog with a heavily matted coat should not be bathed. If a pet is being shaved to ½ inch or less, you should clip before bathing.

What to watch out for when shaving a dog:

- a. In the armpits, only use a #10 or higher blade.
- b. Never use a skipped tooth blade in the armpit area.
- c. Be very careful around the 5 danger areas:
  1. Nipples
  2. Flank
  3. Ears

4. Anus
5. Hock

- d. Be careful not to let the blade get hot. If you are unable to handle the heat of the blade on your wrist, then it is too hot for the pet. Apply coolant spray to the blade and then continue. Using blades that are too hot may result in “clipper burn.” If clipper burn occurs on a pet, it is always the fault of the groomer. Clipper burn looks like a sun burn.

## **10. BRUSHING OUT OR BLOWING OUT THE UNDERCOAT**

There are certain breeds, such as the Chow, Siberian Husky, Akita, etc., that have a thick, heavy undercoat. You must get all this hair raked out or blown out before the bath. The undercoat is hair that is turning loose so the new coat can grow in. Raking it out or blowing it out prior to bathing, will give you better results when you dry the dog.

When brushing a dog always use a downward flicking stroke. With a slicker brush, always begin at the base of the skull working your way to the tail. Continue to the legs by starting at the bottom and brush as you move upwards. When using any brush, always apply light pressure and don't go over the same area so much that the skin becomes irritated; this is called “brush burn.” Brush burn is always the groomers fault.

You should always brush a coat that exhibits a lot of undercoat and matting before bathing. If you wet a coat with tangles or it is in bad condition, it will be much more difficult to remove any mats and dry the hair.

By creating a habit to do these steps prior to bathing, it will help improve your speed and will keep you from forgetting to do them. Nothing makes a client more unhappy than when details are missed. There will be times that you will be very busy and details will be overlooked if you do not get into the habit of doing them at the start. Giving the dogs a “once over” at the end of grooming is also a good idea. Not every breed requires all 10 steps prior to bathing. But with all breeds, step one and step two should always be done.

### **BATHING:**

A dog is prepped and ready for a bath when all (if breed appropriate) is completed:

1. All excess hair is removed and the pattern is set.
2. The toenails are cut ( if needed)
3. The ears are cleaned.

4. All mats (tangles) are removed, brushed out or combed out. If you are unable to split the mat, you may have to spot shave them with a #10 or #7 skipped tooth.
5. The sanitation trim has been done ( if breed appropriate)
6. The pads have been shaved ( if breed appropriate),

**FOLLOWING ARE THE STEPS YOU SHOULD TAKE WHEN YOU BATHE THE PET.**

- Read the intake card for any special instructions such as specialty shampoo. If it says hypoallergenic shampoo, you should use only that shampoo.
- Secure the pet in the tub.
- Turn the water on and check to see that the temperature is okay. A comfortable temperature is a little cooler than you would like your bath water to be.
- Wet the body but not the head.
- Check and/or express the anal glands. The anal sacs are found on both side of the anus, which discharge their contents into the rectum. During the bathing process, this would be the time to check to see if they are working properly. This is quite a simple procedure once you have located them and it only takes a few seconds to complete. The anal glands are located inside the anus. These glands are filled with liquid and secrete a foul odor. They should be emptied or expressed while grooming.
- **ON HEALTHY DOGS ONLY:** To relieve the glands, begin in the tub by lifting the dog's tail. Place an index finger and thumb on each side of anus at the 5 o'clock and 7 o'clock position, then gently squeeze and expel the content. A good three squeezes are sufficient. (There is no need to strike gold).
- If you observe any swelling or abnormal condition of the anal area, don't do this procedure. Recommend to the owner that they take their pet to a veterinarian. The discharge should be yellowish to brown in color. If any other color exists, inform the owner. Some pets will start to scoot if their anal glands are impacted. If scooting continues for more than a few days after sac emptying, the sacs should be rechecked. For some individuals, it takes several sac emptying before the sacs stay emptied. If the sacs are empty and scooting persists there may be another cause (such as itchy skin, tapeworms, or even lower back pain).

## ANAL GLANDS HAVE MANY FUNCTIONS:

1. They lubricate the anus.
2. They are used as a scent marker for identification.
3. Many dogs expel the gland to deter another dog.
4. They secrete when they are afraid.

Please refer to the following link for more details on anal glands.  
[http://www.marvistavet.com/html/body\\_anal\\_sacs.html](http://www.marvistavet.com/html/body_anal_sacs.html). Youtube has many videos you can watch to help you get an idea on how to do this properly.

Apply the shampoo and start to rub it all over the body. This will create a nice lather. While bathing, pay special attention to the feet, belly and rectum - these areas get are usually the dirtiest - then rinse thoroughly. If soap is left on the pet, it will cause an itchy, flaky dull coat. When fleas are present, allow the flea shampoo to sit on the pet for 5 to 10 minutes and use a flea comb to remove the fleas. If the water turns red when bathing, it means that you are washing away flea feces. **If the pet is really dirty, do this procedure twice.**

Once you have rinsed the body thoroughly, apply conditioner to the coat. Please note, not all hair types should have conditioner applied. Here are some guide lines on using conditioner- long hair breeds like Maltese, Yorkies, Aphgans are prone to mattes. Dogs with undercoats have thicker courser hair (like Labs) tend to repel dirt therefore not needing conditioner. Dogs that are washed frequently or have dry skin or coat will benefit from a good conditioning treatment. Allow the conditioner to set into the coat while you move to bathe the head and muzzle. Ears **MUST** be protected with cotton so that water does not get in the ear canal. When getting close to the pets eyes, make sure to cover their eyes. Even though we use tearless shampoo, it can still irritate the pet's eyes. On dogs with wrinkles, pay extra attention to those areas since they tend to smell. Make sure to wash the muzzle area. If the pet has eye matter, you could use a flea comb to remove the eye matter. The warm water softens the matter making it easier to remove. As you rinse the face, be careful to avoid getting water in the nose. Try to keep the muzzle in a downward position. Once you have finished with the head, you can proceed to rinse the conditioner off the body. Remember: over rinse if you have to. I always like to apply eye drops to clear the eye from possible soap contact.

Many customers will ask you if you clean the dog's teeth; yes we do – with a toothbrush and toothpaste, but we cannot remove tartar. Many customers think that is what you are going to do. Removing tartar is

very technical. Tooth brushing only removes particles and debris from the teeth and gums. Brushing with a regular toothbrush is sufficient. Always use baking soda or natural toothpaste made for DOGS ONLY. DO NOT USE FLUORIDE TOOTHPASTE ON DOGS; it is not good for them.

What causes bad breath?

1. Pets over the age of four years old can develop tooth decay and gum disease.
2. Chewing at the fur or fleas can cause hair to get trapped in the teeth and become mixed with food causing a foul odor.
3. Pets that eat mainly canned food will develop plaque much faster.

Drying can be done while the dog is still in the bathtub. Dogs with long hair or Poodles and Poodle mixes should be fluff dried. Fluff drying simply means that while you are dry the hair, you are fluffing the hair upward with a slicker brush. You can dry a pet by using a forced air dryer, stand-up drying, or in a cage.

Drying the dog is one of the most important steps. If not done properly, it makes it impossible to do your scissor work correctly. Most dogs can be hand dried.

Poodles and Bichon Frise should NOT be over dried. What this means is that if they look dry, do not dry them more. Start on the topknot, and then the legs, tail, ears and body. **The object is not to let the hair dry curly.** You may need to cover part of the body with a towel as you dry other parts of the body so that area doesn't get dry curly.

Before drying always towel dry to the almost dry stage. It saves time blow-drying.

Always secure the pet to the table when drying. When fluff drying, keep the dryer pointing in the direction the brush is working. Make sure the dryer is not too hot. Use the brush to dry the hair as straight as possible. Do not use your hand to shake the hair dry. Using your hands will cause waves and tangles.

Do not brush ears against the grain. Brush WITH the grain so you won't damage or tear the ear leather.

Most short hair pets can be cage dried. Pets that are being cage-dried should be monitored every few minutes. Check to make sure the pet is not displaying Heat Stress.

## SOME PETS OVERHEAT FASTER THAN OTHERS

Older pets, Puppies, Overweight Pets, Nervous Pets, Excited Pets, and Flat-face pets may have trouble breathing in warm air. Bubbled-eyed pets may suffer eye injury with too much heat.

### Signs of Heat Stress

1. Excessive panting
2. Noisy breathing
3. Heavy salivation
4. Weakness

Always inform the owner about the symptoms and write them down on the pet's record.

Once you have finished drying the pet, if it is a long hair or curly hair breed, make sure that a comb can get through the coat with almost no snagging. It is at this point that the pet is ready for styling.

## CHEMICAL FLEA DIPS

Some pets may require a chemical flea and tick dip. This does not mean that you submerge the pet in water. This just means that a special solution needs to be applied to kill the fleas and ticks. The dip must be prepared according to the manufacture's instructions. **NOTE: Making the solution stronger can make a dog sick.**

If the pet does require a chemical flea dip and the pet is a Poodle, make sure to let the client know that their pet will go home curly and slightly damp. Once the dip is applied, the dog should not be dried with a forced dryer or cage dryer. It must dry naturally, therefore, not allowing for styling of the pet.

Always ask for permission from the customer before applying any dips. Before applying the dip, take notice of the pet's eyes; make sure they are not red, make sure the gums are pink in color and make sure their breathing is normal. Before starting, apply a small amount of Vaseline on the vulva or penis area to protect it from accidental contact with the fluid. Wearing gloves, take the dip and fully saturate the coat, starting from the back of the head and neck and work the dip down the back of the neck, over the back, and down the legs, making sure to get between the toes. It is best to create a barrier around the neck, because fleas will naturally head for higher ground and want to run to the face. Dab the dip with a cotton swab and dab around the face being very careful not to get any on the pet's eyes, nose, mouth, or ear canal. Also, as previously mentioned, avoid the penis or vulva.

Once you have applied the dip, wait a few moments and watch for any reaction the pet may have. Some pets will have a reaction to dips. If you find this to be the case, rewash the dog immediately. With most reactions, the skin turns very red or the dog acts lethargic, starts to drool and displays labored breathing. If a reaction occurs, rinse the dip off, mention it to the owner so that they can watch the dog carefully for any further complications.

Following are some pictures to help you identify them:

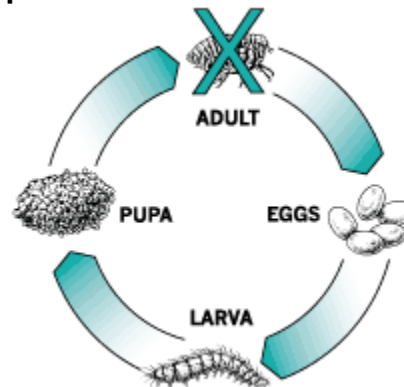


**FLEA**



**TICK**

**It is also important to understand the flea lifecycle.**



A single female flea may produce up to 2,000 eggs over her lifetime. Eggs hatch and can develop into adults within only three weeks. Adult female fleas feed by ingesting blood from your pet and subsequently lay eggs, which drop off your pet's coat. Within days, larvae hatch from the eggs and live undetected in your pet's surroundings, such as the carpet, bedding and other protected areas. Flea larvae spin a cocoon and when appropriately stimulated, a young adult flea emerges and jumps onto your pet to continue the life cycle. Dark specs that do not move on the pet indicate flea feces.



## **FLEAS**

Fleas can cause many problems to the pet such as:

1. Skin Eruptions
2. Dull Coat
3. Anemia
4. Dry Skin
5. Flea bite allergies
6. Internal parasites (worms)
7. Hot spots (moist eczema)
8. Extreme cases can cause death.

## **SHEDDING TREATMENTS**

Some pets lose their undercoat twice a year while others shed regularly. This process is a natural event that allows the new coat to come in. All dogs shed; - some more than others. There is no such thing as a non-shedding dog; however shedding varies greatly from breed to breed. Dogs that shed less are more prone to getting matted if not properly groomed on a regular basis.

### **How do you reduce shedding?**

Regular grooming will control the shedding. Most owners won't take the time to do regular brushing. Since the hair is going to fall out anyways, it is better for the owner to brush regularly to not to allow hair to end up all over the house.

There are several products and supplements out there that help reduce shedding. A popular product is "The Furminator." The basic steps are as follows:

1. Blow out the coat with a high-velocity dryer.
2. Use the shedding blade to remove most of the loose undercoat.
3. Apply the Furminator shampoo and let sit for about 5 minutes.
4. Rinse shampoo thoroughly from fur.
5. Apply Furminator conditioner and let sit for about 5 minutes.
6. Rinse conditioner thoroughly from fur.
7. Dry coat and use shedding blade to remove rest of loose undercoat.

### **Dogs that are sprayed by a skunk**

Did you know that it takes up to two full weeks for the skunk smell to go away? Did you also know that humid or wet days can re-activate the skunk odor? What does this mean to a groomer? It means money in the pocket. Over 50% of people who have a pet sprayed by a skunk will take their pet to get a treatment.

Washing or bathing a dog in tomato juice to remove skunk smell is a popular myth. It does have a small neutralizing effect, but all it really does is create a big mess. There is nothing more frustrating than having to remove tomatoes juice from all the walls after a dog shakes it off.

Removing skunk spray is most effective during the first few hours after spraying. The following is an effective home remedy.

### **Step 1**

Mix 4 cups of hydrogen peroxide with 4 tablespoons of baking soda and 1 teaspoon of dish-washing liquid.

### **Step 2**

Put cotton balls in your pet's ears to protect the inner-ear tissue from the cleaning mixture which could easily drip in.

### **Step 3**

Wear rubber gloves to protect your hands during this process.

### **Step 4**

Start with the pet's head, taking care not to get the solution into his eyes, ears or mouth. Apply a drop of olive or baby oil to his eyes to prevent irritation.

### **Step 5**

Rub the mixture evenly into your pet's coat.

### **Step 6**

Rinse the coat with clean water.

### **Step 7**

Repeat if the smell persists.

Use the solution immediately after preparation. Do not store unused solution.

There are also many professional products out that are also effective. The most popular ones are: "Skunk Off," "PPP Skunk Odor Removal Shampoo" and "Nature's Miracle Skunk Odor Remover."

## PET IS CLEAN, NOW WHAT?

A key to steady hand scissoring is scissor exercises. The following pictures demonstrate scissor exercises that help you have a steady hand. The purpose of the exercises is to eliminate chopping work. The goal is to only move your thumb while other fingers keep the scissors steady. Practice this technique every night for at least 10 minutes.

Put scissors under a table and push up as you open and close the scissors. You should be able to apply pressure against the table. Only your thumb should move. Be sure that your thumb does not slip all the way in the thumb ring. (Your ring finger and small finger should not be allowed to slip far into the ring either). Your middle and index finger should support the shaft of the scissor.

**Horizontal Exercise**



**Horizontal Exercise**



This exercise will come in handy when trimming legs. Apply pressure towards the table.

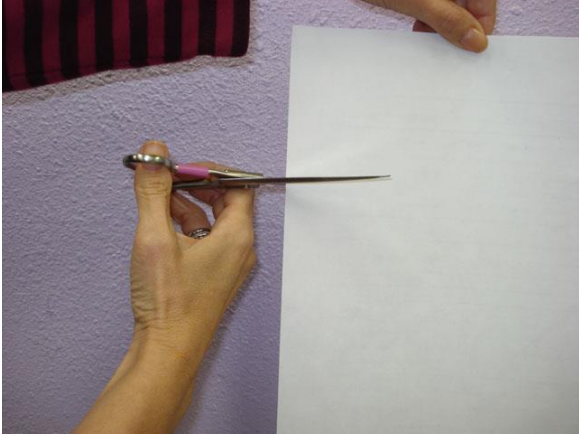
**Vertical Exercise**



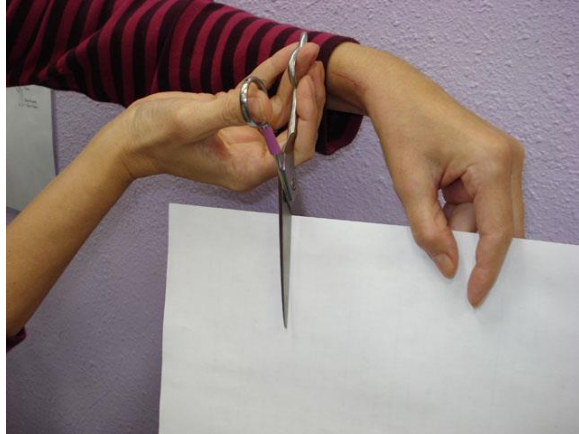
**Vertical Exercise**



### Practice Cutting Straight Horizontal Lines



### Practice Cutting Straight Vertical Lines



### BLADE AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE:

We suggest that you maintain and clean your blades and clippers **ONCE A WEEK**: If you groom a dog that was especially dirty, clean your equipment prior to using it on the next pet. Following is a link to educate you further on clipper and blade maintenance. Following is a link to educate you further on clipper and blade maintenance.

[http://www.petedge.com/library/library.jsp?pageName=ec\\_profclippermaint](http://www.petedge.com/library/library.jsp?pageName=ec_profclippermaint)

### CLIPPER BURN:

This occurs when clippers are allowed to get too hot and the blade skimming against the pet's skin is shaved.

You must learn to check the temperature of the blade often by laying the flat side of it on the inside of your wrist, just like you would check the temperature of a baby's milk bottle.

To cool off a blade, use **Kool Lube** and spray on the blade for a few seconds, before you continue grooming. Having two sets of clipper blades is a good idea; this way you can switch back and forth.

### CLIPPER IRRITATION:

This may occur after clipping a pet that has never been clipped before or is not groomed frequently enough to get the skin conditioned to be shaved.

There are four ways you can cause irritation:

1. Shaving against the grain WITH a SHORT BLADE LIKE THE 10, 15, 30, or 40.
2. Shaving over and over in one spot too many times with a short blade, like a 15 or shorter.
3. Using a hot blade.
4. Using a dull blade.

### **BLADES:**

**#10:** This is the most commonly used blade. You should have more than one of these blades. This blade is very good for clipping the under body and other sensitive areas. It is commonly used for stripping a dog as this blade leaves about 1/8th of hair on the dog.

**#7F:** This is designed to finish clipper work and leave a nice smooth finish. It is a very handy blade to work on dog's faces with extremely sensitive skin. This blade leaves about 1/4th of hair on the dog.

**#7:** This is a popular one for stripping down dogs with matted hair. The blade is a skipped tooth and should only be used by experienced groomers. There is a large gap between the teeth; therefore there is a higher chance of accidentally getting skin caught in them and having the cutting part of the blade nick the dog.

**#5F:** This blade leaves a much smoother finish - about 1/2 of hair on the dog.

**#4F:** This blade leaves about 3/4 of hair on the dog.

**#3F:** This blade leaves about 1 inch of a hair on the coat.

### **HANDLING PROBLEM DOGS**

If you encounter a problem pet, this is what to do:

1. Hold the leash and head away from you and put your hand under the farthest end of the pet's body, lifting the pet to the table.
2. Use an Elizabethan collar or muzzle to keep it from biting you.
3. If you've tried to calm the pet and it still does not cooperate, call the owner to come pick up the pet.

### **NEVER ADMINISTER DRUGS:**

You are not a Veterinarian. Many owners will swear that their pet has never bit anyone. NEVER say NEVER! Give the pet the proper respect and offer a kind hand and a friendly voice; you will have a greater chance of not getting bit. If the pet does not cooperate, tell the owner to obtain a muzzle or suggest that the owner have the pet sedated.

## CLIPPING AGAINST THE GRAIN

Sometimes you have to go against the grain with your clipper to get it right. To briefly explain, there are times when the hair is too short or lays too flat to allow for the blade to clip the hair at the desired length. When this is the case, it is time to reverse clip. Let's assume that you are asked to leave a ½ inch on the body and you find that the blade is not picking up all the hair evenly. Then the solution to the problem would be to use a 3F against the grain instead of the 5F with the grain. This technique also comes in handy when you find yourself with a dull 5F and you haven't finished the job. The following is a guideline for blades and reverse clipping.

**Reverse Blade Guideline**

3F	Leaves 1 inch with the Grain	Against Grain	Same As	5F With Grain
4F	Leaves ¾ inch with the grain	Against Grain	Same As	A little longer than 7F With Grain
5F	Leaves 1/2 inch with the grain	Against Grain	Same As	7F With Grain
7F	Leaves ¼ inch with the grain	Against Grain	Same As	10 With Grain

## PET HEALTH

### EAR INFECTIONS:

You will need to know the difference between a healthy ear and an unhealthy ear. an unhealthy ear is wet or damp and has a foul odor. They are usually DARK pink in color. Breeds with floppy ears are more susceptible to ear infections.

A healthy ear is dry and free of odor. Breeds with erect ears usually do not suffer from chronic ear infections.

### KENNEL COUGH:

Kennel Cough is a highly contagious disease. It can last from two weeks to two months at times. You should not accept a dog with kennel cough into your grooming area. Some dogs get excited and will start coughing especially if they are on a choke chain. Take the choke chain off and if he continues, ask the owner how long he has been coughing this way. If he says he's been acting like this for some time, then do NOT accept the dog into your shop. He needs to go to the veterinarian.

## **PARVO**

The canine parvo virus can be transmitted by direct contact or indirectly by contact with vomit, diarrhea or any contaminated discharges from an infected dog. It strikes with a quick vengeance and pet owners often make the comment that their dog was up and playing a few hours prior to the animal becoming extremely ill. Unfortunately, parvo is often fatal.

The symptoms of parvo include. a sudden onset of vomiting, bloody diarrhea, dehydration, lethargy, high temperature and sometimes sudden death. Symptoms are similar in adults although they can be less acute. Because parvo attacks swiftly, time is of the essence. If you feel a dog has been exposed to parvo or is showing symptoms, contact your veterinarian or an emergency veterinary hospital immediately.

## **THE FOLLOWING ARE SKIN DISORDERS YOU SHOULD BECOME FAMILIAR WITH.**

### **Dermatitis:**

Dermatitis is considered to be any form of skin inflammation. It may appear as scales or scabs. The pet will itch and scratch on the areas. The skin can become infected and can be treated with antibiotics.

### **Eczema:**

This is known as hot spots or dry skin. A veterinarian will prescribe ointments.

### **Hematoma:**

This appears when a blood vessel is broken. The skin swells and appears as a soft, red bump.

### **Mange:**

There are two types of mange: demodectic mange, sometimes known as red mange, and sarcoptic mange, also called scabies.

Most dogs with demodectic mange also called Red Mange have some form of mites. This mange is not contagious has three forms, Localized, Generalized, and Pododermatitis. The mange has a scaly looking coat or loss of hair around the eyes, mouth and front legs. Along with loss of hair, the skin will turn red and become thick and wrinkled. The skin does not itch.

## DEMODECTIC MANGE

Pictures courtesy of [www.marvistavet.com](http://www.marvistavet.com)



**Localized**



**Generalized**



**Pododermatitis**

Refer to the following link for further education on Demodectic mange:

[http://www.marvistavet.com/html/demodectic\\_mange.html](http://www.marvistavet.com/html/demodectic_mange.html)

Sarcoptic mange attacks the entire body of the dog. This particular mange is highly contagious. Dogs with this condition have red, crusty skin with moist areas. There is a musty odor and an intense itch.

## SARCOPTIC MANGE



PICTURE COURTESY OF: <http://piperbasenji.blogspot.com/2010/10/mange-ewwww.html>

If you notice these conditions on a dog, notified the owner and tell him the dog should see a veterinarian. **A dog with demodectic mange can be groomed, but you should be careful and make sure to disinfect everything after you use them. A DOG WITH SARCOPTIC MANGE SHOULD NOT ENTER YOUR GROOMING AREA. IT IS HIGHLY CONTAGIOUS AND CAN BE TRANSMITTED TO DOGS AND HUMANS**

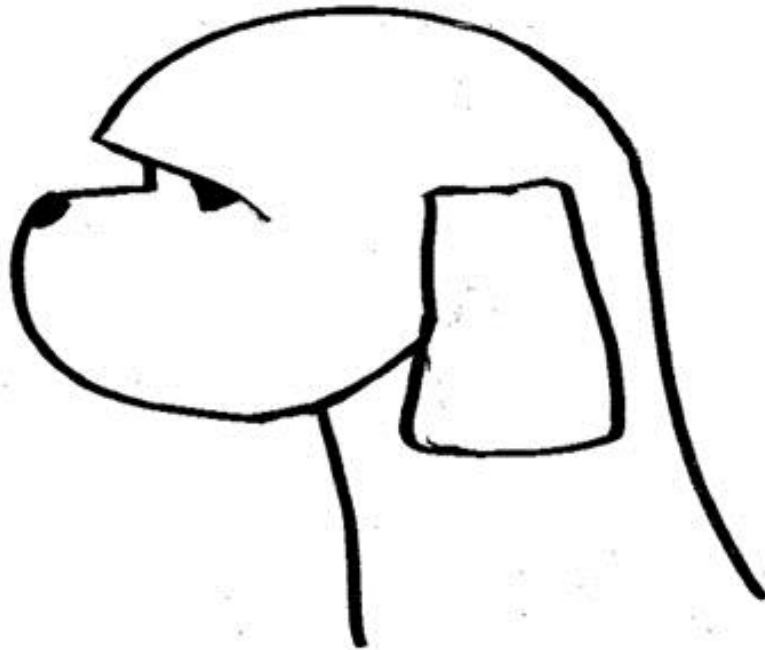
For further education on sarcoptic mange, please click on the following link:

[http://www.marvistavet.com/html/body\\_sarcoptic\\_mange.html](http://www.marvistavet.com/html/body_sarcoptic_mange.html)

**Be sure to view the Pet Hygiene Videos as there is a wealth of information within them!**



## **Teddy Head Clip**



**This is a finished Teddy head for Yorkies, Maltese, Shih Tzu, Lhasa Apso, and other small mixed breeds.**

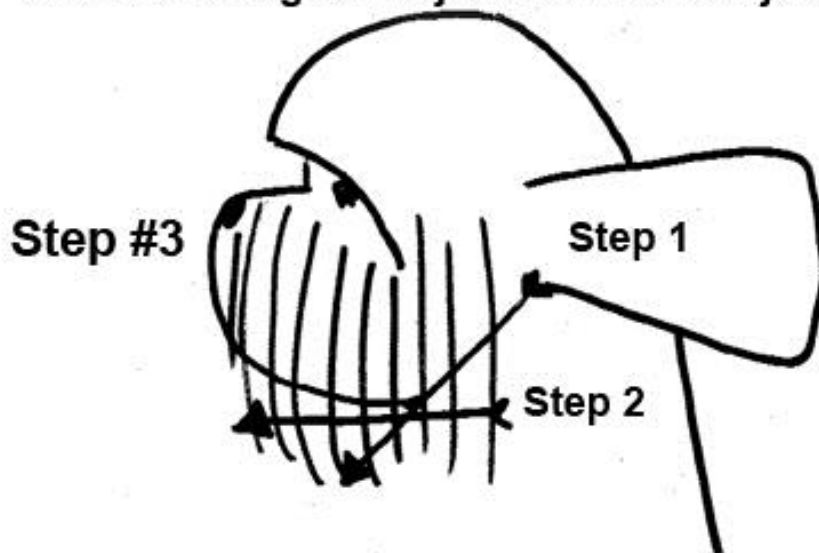
**Step #1: Comb bangs forward & cut at dotted line an upside down "U" using your straight shears.**



**Step #2: Use an attachment comb (that depends on the desired length) and clip from top of head down the cheeks.**



Use your straight shears and trim a straight line from the ear and at an angle towards the jaw. Then another straight line just beneath the jaw.



Now, use your thinning shears or curved scissors to round & shape.



## **Notes**

# **Dog Breeds**

**Step**

**By**

**Step**

# **Grooming**

# AFFENPINSCHER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the insides of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade) on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads. Use thinning shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas on the body or beard, use your comb and remove all mats before bathing.

**Sixth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Seventh Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Eighth Step:**

Comb and Fluff. Use thinning shears to smooth out coat.

**Ninth Step:**

Use your shears and round the hair on the outside edges of all feet.

**Tenth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the ears, from the base to the tips. Use your shears to trim the outside edges of the ears for neatness.

**Eleventh Step:**

Use your shears so the eyebrows appear like a visor with no space between them. Make sure they are even on both sides starting from the center of the eyebrows to the outside. Use thinning shears to trim the hair from the outside of the eyebrows to the base of the ears.

**Twelfth Step:**

Use your shears and round out outside edges of beard, keeping the fullness.

**Thirteenth Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

## **Become a Certified Pet Groomer**

**Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

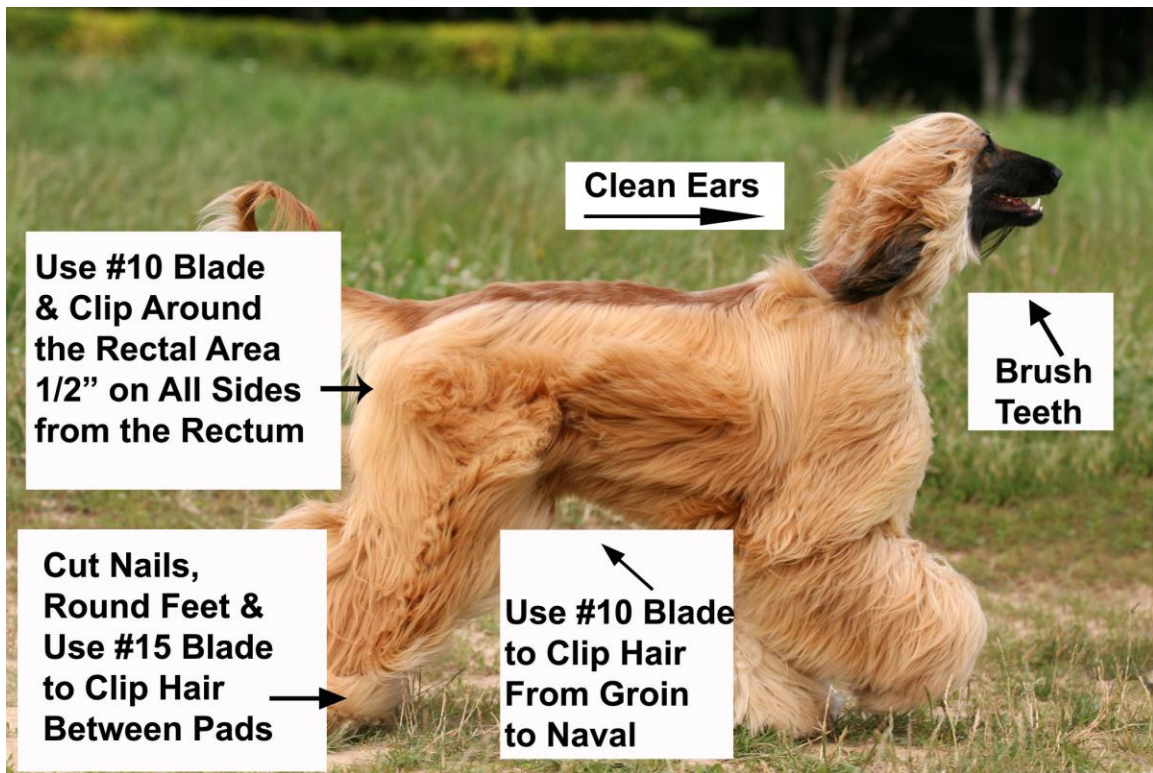
**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>



## **Notes**

# AFGHAN HOUND



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Brush (soft), Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, cream rinse, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade) on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim hair from the groin to the naval.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Crème Rinse** (if desired) after rinsing shampoo out. Leave on for a few minutes and rinse thoroughly before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

The hocks on the back legs can be shown off by brushing the hair close to the leg. The bend in the stifle on the rear legs, can be shown off by brushing the hair forward.

**Tenth Step:**

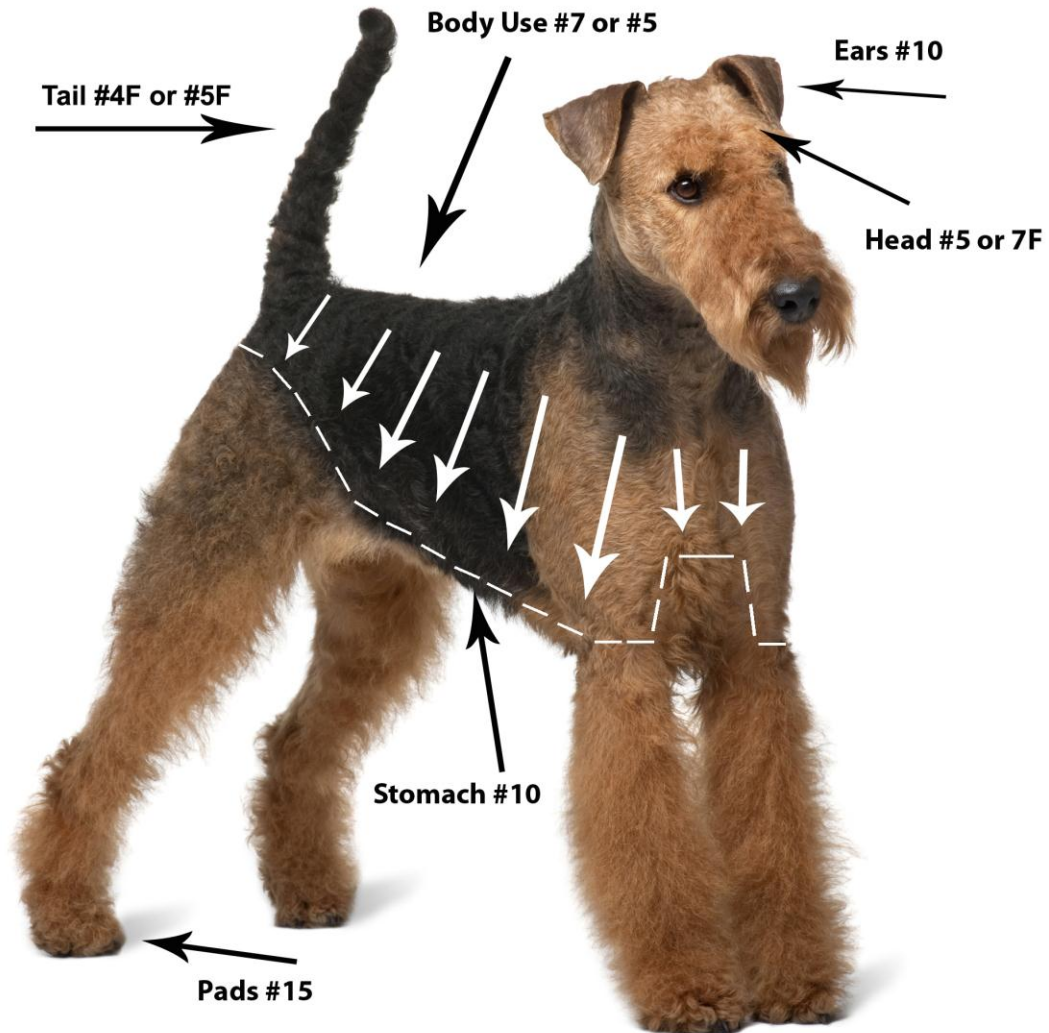
Part the hair on the head down the middle, from the base of the skull to the top of the skull where it ends naturally. Comb hair down on both sides of the head. Alternative topknot styling: Comb hair forward and upward for a natural appearance.

**Eleventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:** Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. If satisfied call mom or dad and have him/her picked up.

# AIREDALE TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #15 or #40 Blade, #10 blade, #5F blade, #7F or #8 ½ blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For your sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Sixth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Seventh Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry. Comb and fluff.

**Eighth Step: BODY**

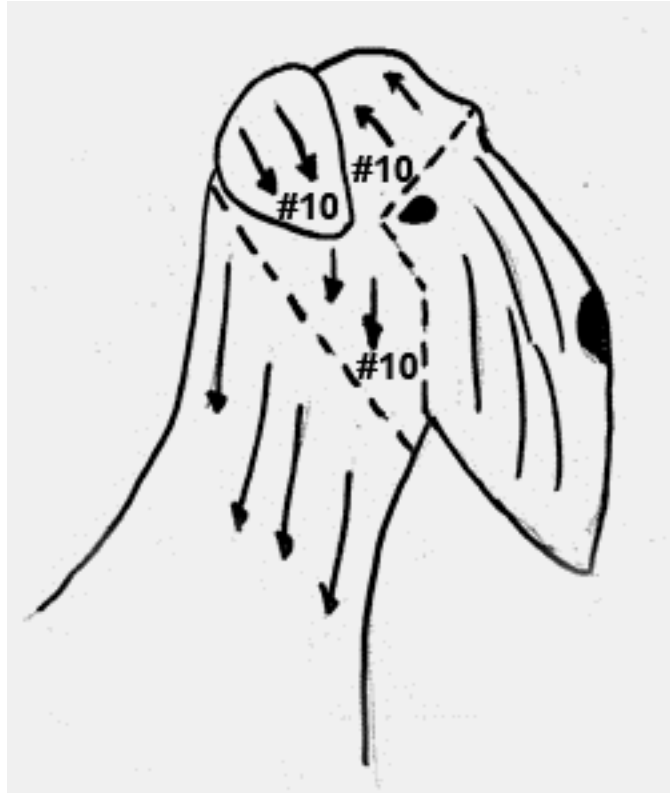
Use either your #5F, #7F or #8 ½ blade and follow the natural direction of the hair growth. Using the breastbone as your guide, clip in this order:

- 1) Base of skull down to back of the base of the tail.
- 2) Clip the entire tail.
- 3) Down the sides of the neck to the shoulder and ending at the elbow in front.
- 4) Down the sides of the body past the flank at rear and ending at the hip on the hind legs.
- 5) Down the chest and shoulders to the front arm and the elbow at the side.

### **Ninth Step: FACE**

Use your #10 blade.

- 1) Comb hair forward around eyes. Clip from the upper part of the eye socket to the base of the skull.
- 2) Clip from the outside part of the eye to the base of the ear.
- 3) Clip cheek starting at outside corner of the eye.



### **Tenth Step: EARS**

Use your #10 blade.

- 1) Clip both sides of the ears starting at base of ears.
- 2) Use shears to even out edges of ears.

### **Eleventh Step: EYEBROWS**

Use your thinning shears/comb.

- 1) Comb eyebrows forward and create a V shape with thinning shears by removing extra hair.
- 2) Diagonally trim eyebrows from the outside to the center. A triangular shape is desired.

### **Twelfth Step: MUZZLE/BEARD**

Use your thinning shears.

- 1) Trim extra hair from top of muzzle.
- 2) Comb beard forward and thin from corner of mouth to corner of eyebrow. Line should appear straight.
- 3) Shape beard into a barrel shape. Thin if necessary.

**Thirteenth Step: UNDERCHEST/FORECHEST/LEGS**

Use your shears/thinning shears.

- 1) With shears trim underchest hair from elbow pointing toward flank and following body lines.
- 2) Use your shears to shape front legs. They should be straight with legs full and rounded.
- 3) Use thinning shears to shape rear legs. The hip and leg should be smoothly blended.
- 4) Use your thinning shears to smooth out forechest.
- 5) Use your shears to round off feet.

**Fourteenth Step:**

Hand rub conditioner into coat. You may also want to spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. Call mom or dad and have him/her picked up.

# AKITA



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake, Shedding Blade  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing. Remove any dead hair with your shedding blade.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Use thinning shears or curved shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. You can also lightly spray cologne on the coat. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# ALASKAN MALAMUTE



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and r **Option:** De-shed Treatment remove all mats before bathing.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** after rinsing (optional), making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Comb and fluff.

**Seventh Step:**

Use thinning shears or curved shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Eighth Step:**

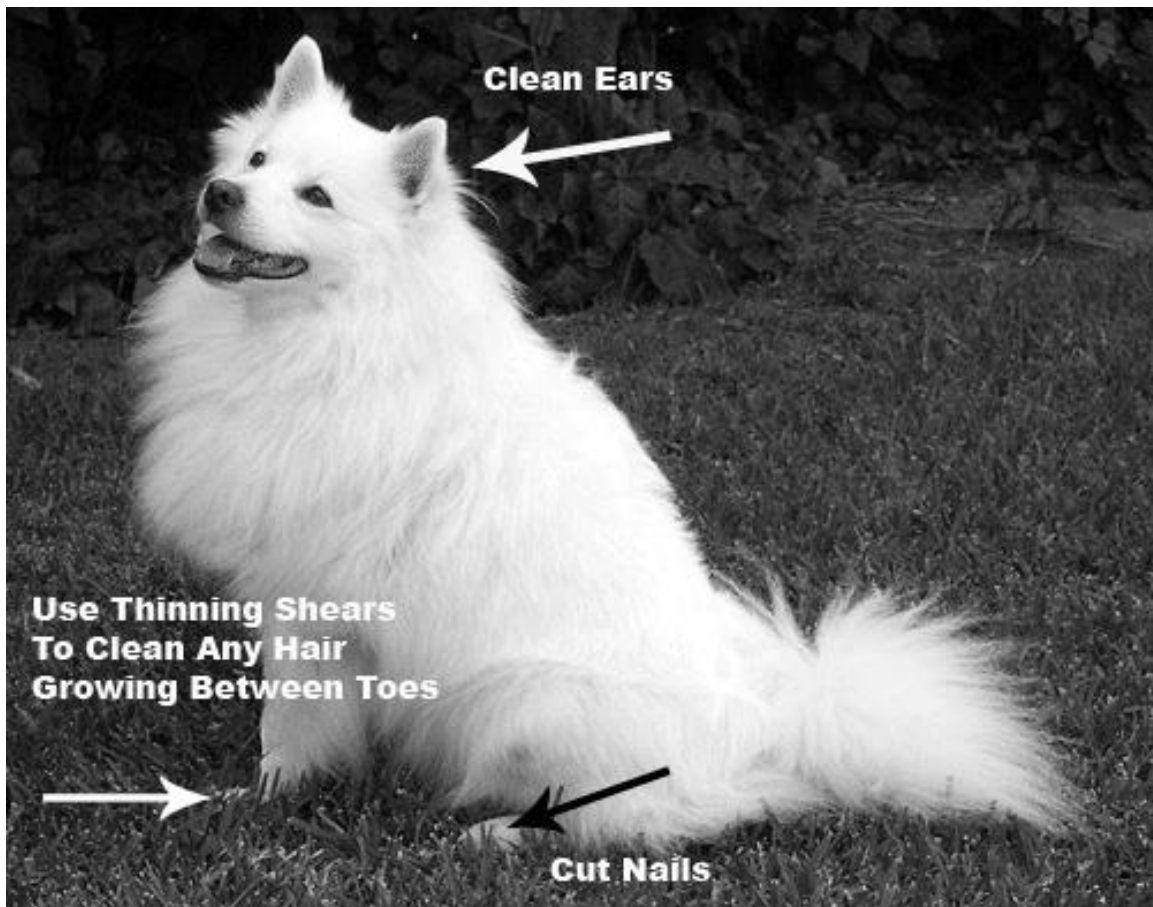
Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Ninth Step:**

You may want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:** Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# AMERICAN ESKIMO



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Dematting Comb or Rake, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### **Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers and cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and re **Option:** De-shed Treatment move all mats before bathing.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Comb and fluff.

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Use you thinning shears (for a more natural look) or curved shears to clean up straggly hair around and between the toes and paws.

**Ninth Step:**

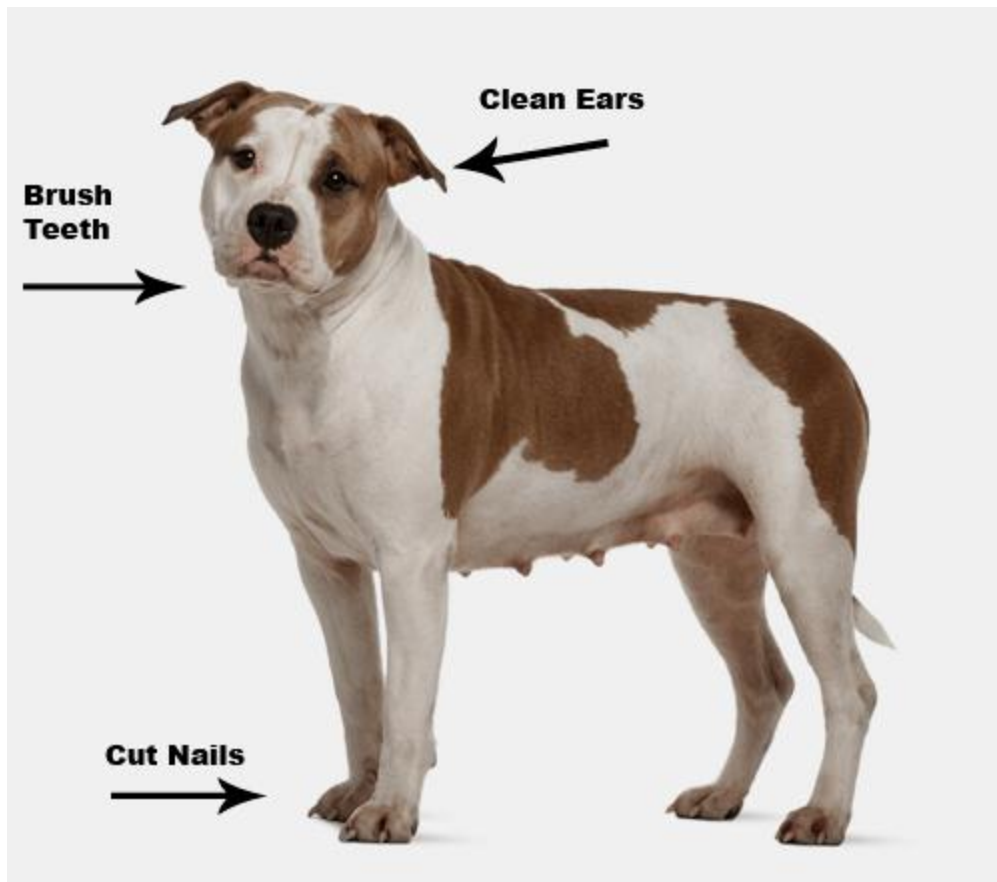
Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# AMERICAN STAFFORDSHIRE TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage to create sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# AMERICAN WATER SPANIEL



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Straight Shears, Nail Clipper,  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 Blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder to lightly dry ears and pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers and cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade) on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads. Use thinning shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb and remove all mats before bathing.

**Sixth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Seventh Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog completely or cage dry.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your shears and round the hair on the outside edges of the feet. Use shears to clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

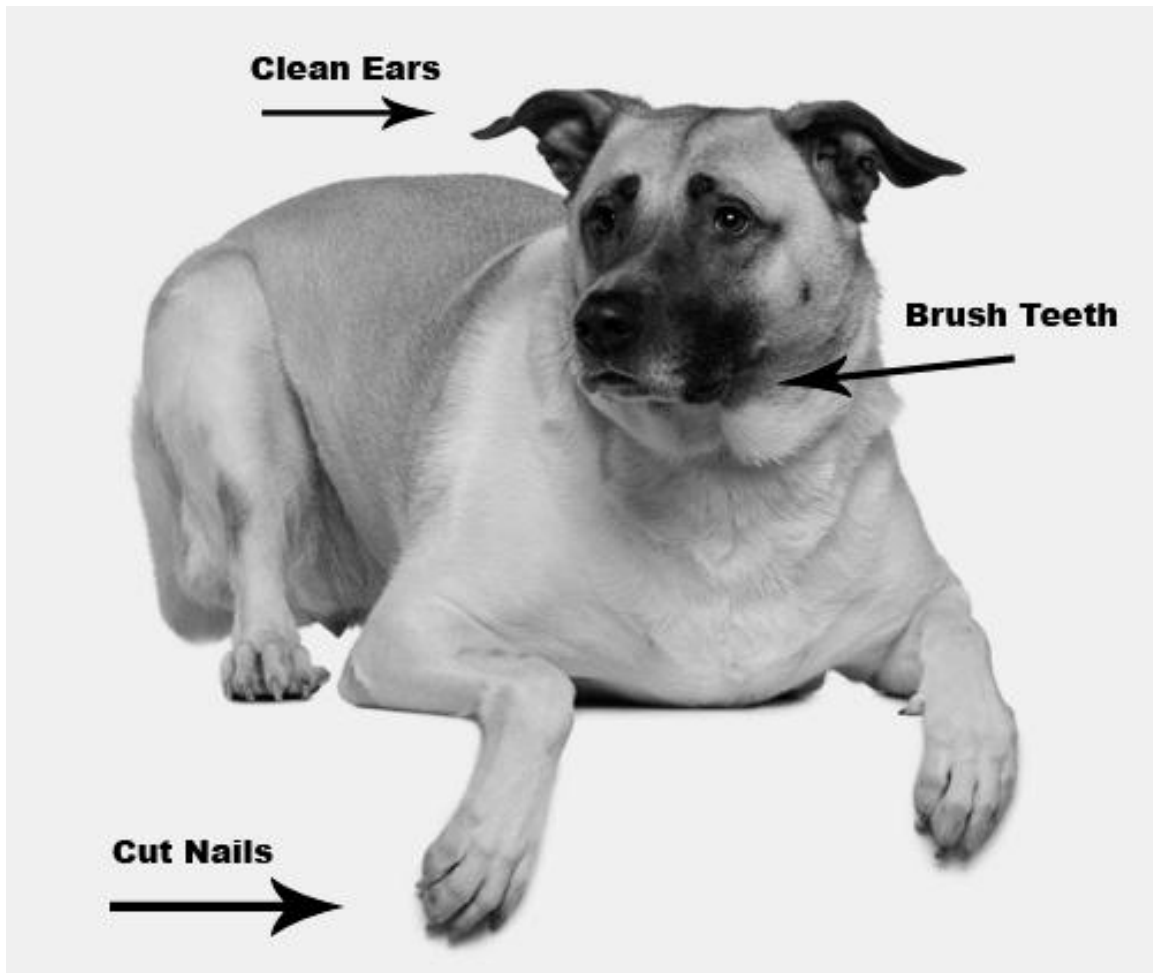
**Ninth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to shorten any uneven hair on the head, body and tail.

**Tenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Use comb to create sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne. You're Done!

# ANATOLIAN SHEPHERD



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush, Bristle Brush (stiff)  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers and cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time.** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone. Clean wrinkles on body. Wash any folds on face.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears to clean up the whiskers.

**Seventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# AUSTRALIAN CATTLE DOG



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Shedding Blade  
Nail Clipper

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### **Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers and cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. For large amounts of shedding hair use your shedding blade.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

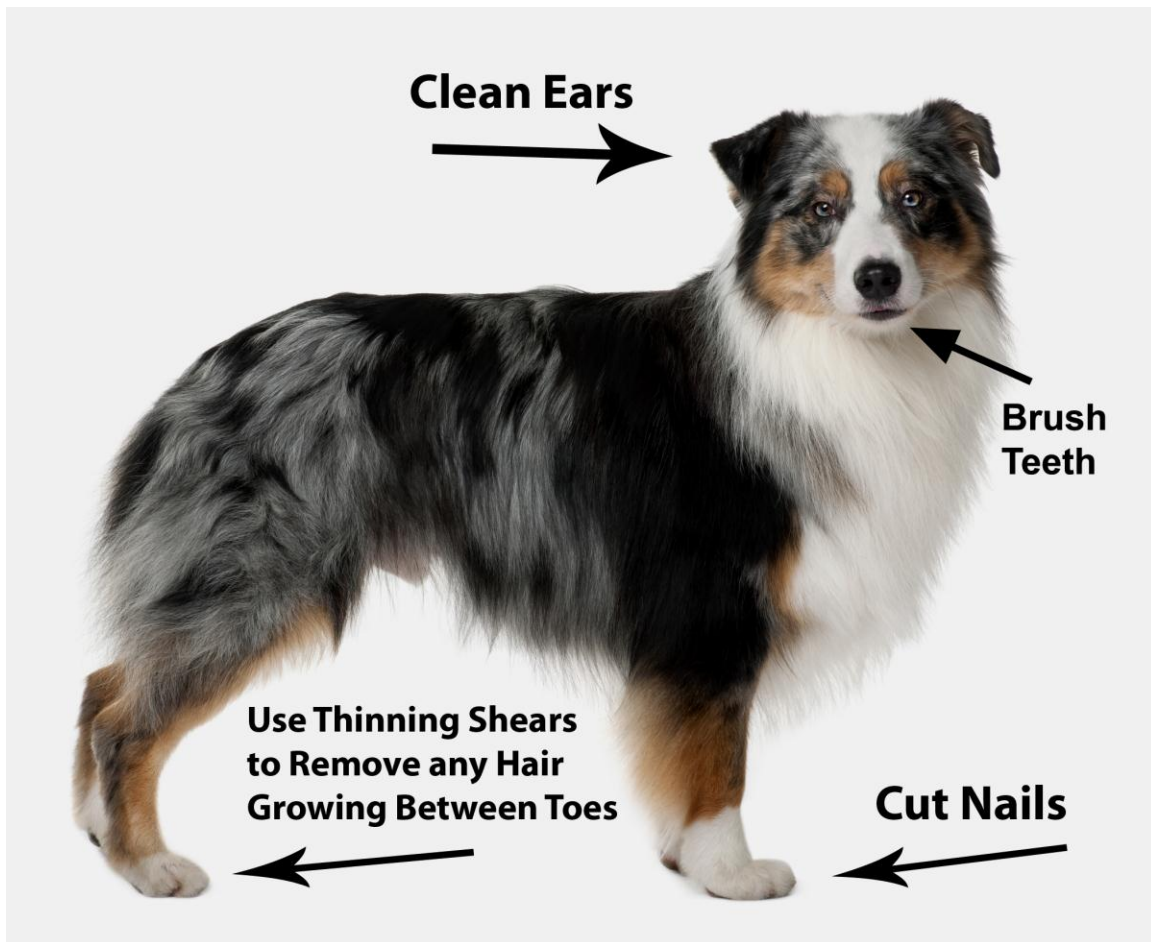
Spray coat with conditioner and comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# AUSTRALIAN SHEPHERD



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers and cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use thinning shears or curved shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Fourth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fifth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Sixth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Comb and fluff.

**Ninth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner and comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!



# AUSTRALIAN TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.



**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and Fluff.

**Tenth Step:**

Use your thinning shears and clean up the neck, body, tail and hair under eyes.

**Eleventh Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim hair off back of ears.

**Twelfth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to feather the front legs up to the elbow. Leave feathering on the back of legs above the hocks.

**Thirteenth Step:**

Use your shears to feather the tail evenly. Leave hair on tip.

**Fourteenth Step:**

Use a brush and comb to train the topknot upward. Use shears to blend hair between eyes into topknot.

**Fifteenth Step:**

Use your shears to round off edges of feet.

**Sixteenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:** Place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

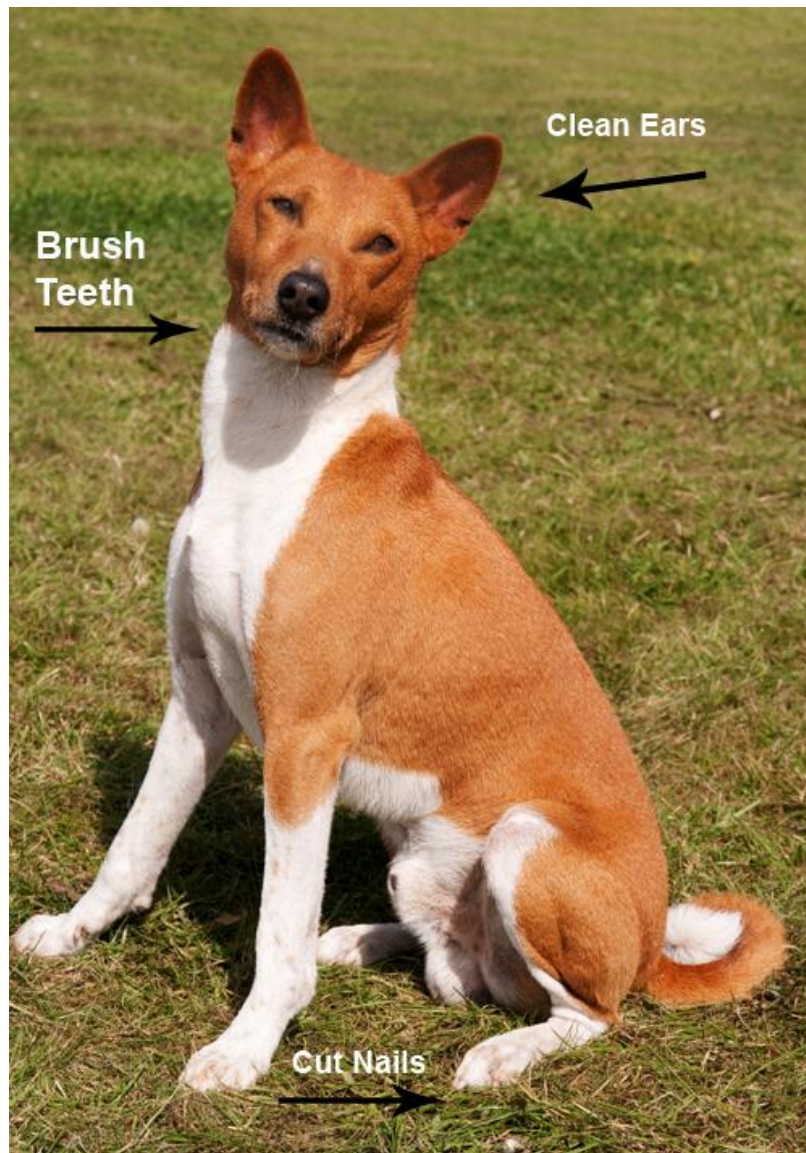
<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

# BASENJI



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your clippers and cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and ears and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage to increase natural gloss. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# BASSET HOUND



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers and cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Clean wrinkles on body. Wash any folds on face. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your scissors and clean up the whiskers.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage to create a natural gloss. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# BEAGLE



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana



**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your clippers and cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage to create a natural gloss. You may also want to spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# BEARDED COLLIE



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake, Pin Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, crème rinse, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area 1/2" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Crème Rinse** after rinsing shampoo out, making sure you rinse the crème rinse out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff.

**Tenth Step:**

Use your shears to round off feet.

**Eleventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. Brush with your pin brush to create a fluffy look. Brush the legs and the sides down. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

# BEAUCERON



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears to clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage into coat to create sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# BEDLINGTON TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #5F blade, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade, #30 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your comb and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff.

**Tenth Step:****BODY/**

- 1) Use your #5F blade and clip (making a line) starting at the withers (between the shoulder blades) down to the middle of the back and stop. Take your blade from the point of where you stopped and move one blade width over to the side and proceed to clip down to the back of the hip and stop and the base of the tail. Repeat this procedure on the other side.

- 2) Use your #5F blade to clip both sides to the hip line, so it is smooth and blends. Clip down to the hips, blending in with the legs.
- 3) Use your #5F to clip the side of the body towards the front down to the elbow.
- 4) Use your #5F blade to clip the chest starting at the throat and going to the sternum.
- 5) Use your shears to blend the chest and along the sides.
- 6) Use your shears to blend the hips and front legs with the body to give it a more nature look.

#### **Eleventh Step:**

##### **LEGS**

- 1) Use your shears to trim the front legs so they look tubular (straight and rounded).
- 2) Use your shears to trim the rear legs so the stifle shows a slight bend.
- 3) Use your shears to round off the feet.

#### **Twelfth Step:**

##### **TAIL**

- 1) Use your #10 or #15 blade against the grain and clip all the hair off the tail starting at the tip of the tail, leaving 1/3 of the tail un-shaved.
- 2) The 1/3 near the base of the tail should be blended in smoothly with the body and slightly tapering it.

#### **Thirteenth Step:**

##### **THROAT/FACE/NECK**

- 1) Use your #5F blade and clip starting at the lobe of the ear and clip all the way down the sides of the neck and the front of the neck.
- 2) Continue with the #5F and shave the back of the neck to the withers, creating a "V" shape from the base of the skull to the withers.
- 3) Use your #10 or #15 blade to mirror the 'V' on the back of the head, on the throat. To do this, start at the lobe of the ear and clip down the throat and angle the clip towards the middle of the throat, creating the point of the "V".
- 4) Use your #10 or #15 blade to cleanup the hair on the face, starting at the inside corner of the ear and ending at the outside corner of the eye. Continue from the corner of the eye to right down behind the corner of the mouth.
- 5) Use your #10 or #15 blade to trim under the jaw. Clean up around the lips by stretching them back. Do not clip the muzzle above the jaw.

#### **Fourteenth Step:**

##### **EARS**

- 1) Use your #30 blade and trim both sides of the ears, going with the grain. Start at the base stop about 1 ½ inch before the tip, leaving a diamond shaped tassel at the end of each ear.
- 2) Use your shears to neaten up the outside edges of the ears and to repeat your 'V' shape at the end of the tassels.

### **Fifteenth Step:**

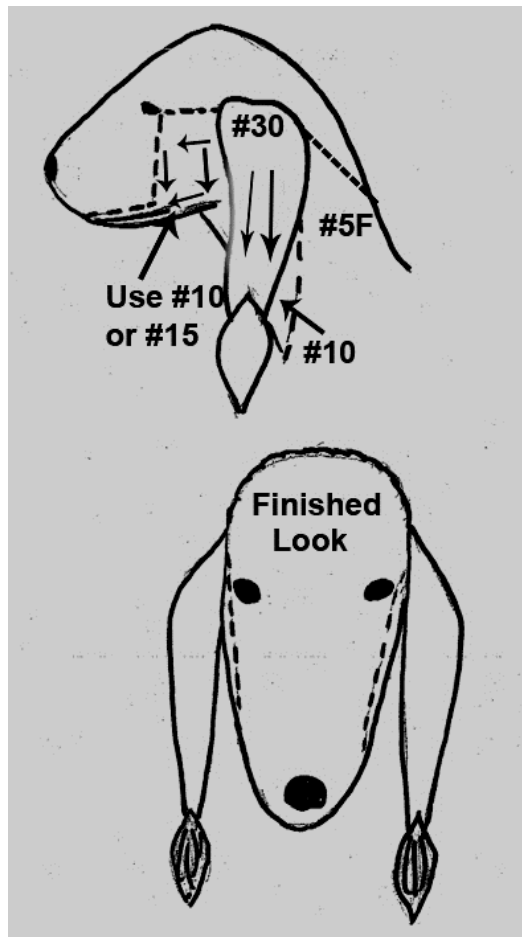
#### **HEAD**

- 1) Use your shears to trim the head flat on the sides. It should blend smoothly up into a topknot. The topknot should blend into the neck at the back.
- 2) Use your shears to trim the muzzle so it blends in with the topknot. Trim it close on the sides and leave it full on the top.
- 3) Use your shears to create a rounded top which blends in with the muzzle and the 'V' shaped neck. Blend the "V" shape on the back of the neck to give it a seamless look.

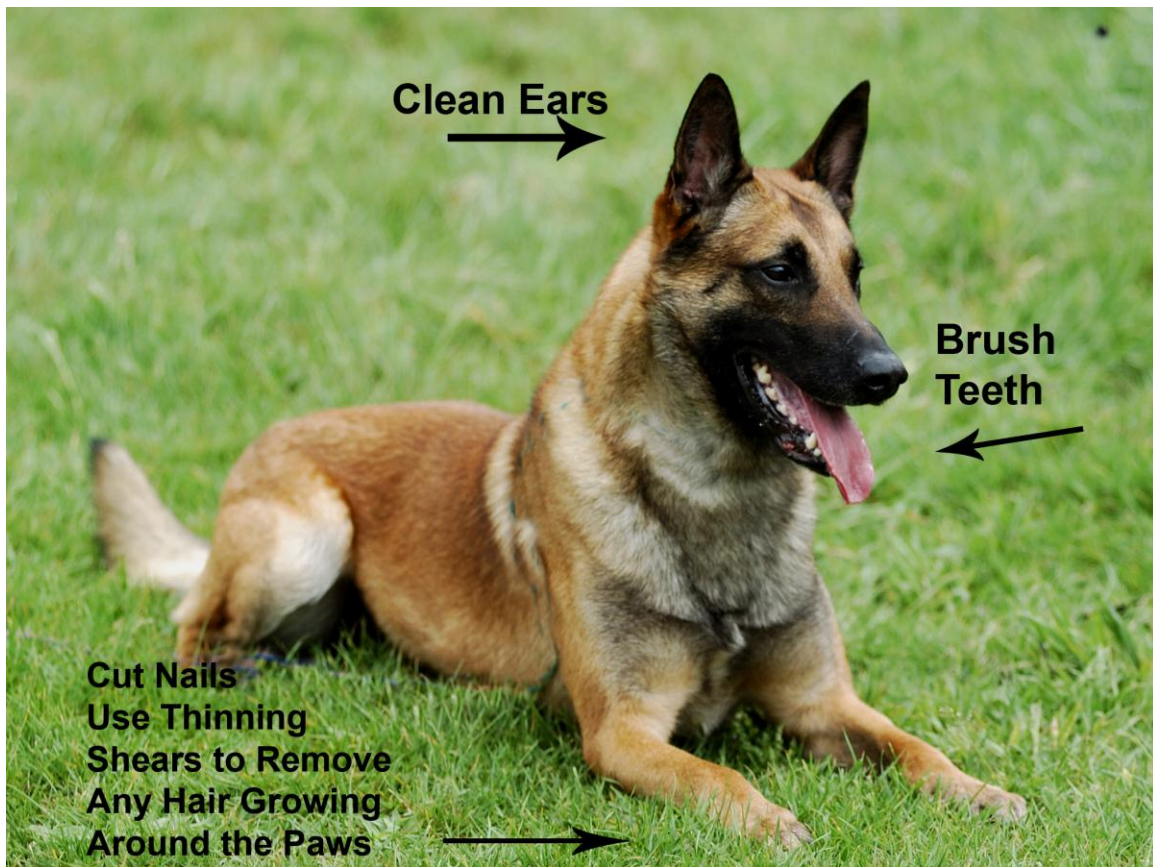
### **Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!



# BELGIAN MALINOIS



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Shedding Blade  
Straight Shears, Nail Clipper  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers and cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. Remove any dead hair with shedding blade. Use thinning shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Use your thinning shears or curved shears to clean up the hair around the paws.

**Eighth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# BELGIAN SHEEPDOG



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Shedding Blade  
Straight Shears, Nail Clipper  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use thinning shears or curved shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Fourth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. Remove any dead hair with your shedding blade.

**Fifth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Sixth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Seventh Step:**

Comb and fluff.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

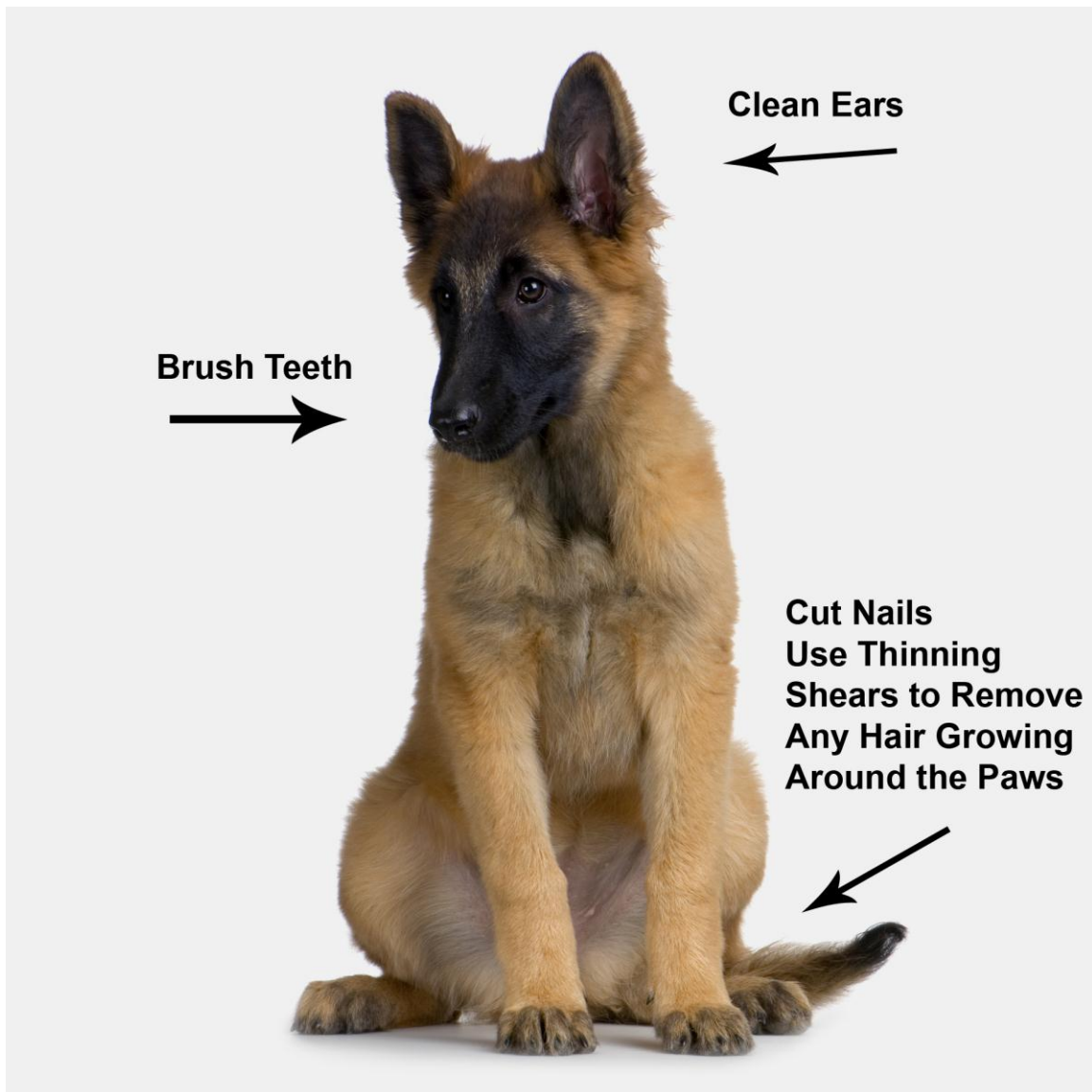
**Ninth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

# BELGIAN TEVUREN



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Shedding Blade  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers and cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use thinning shears or curved shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Fourth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. Remove any dead hair with your shedding brush.

**Fifth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Sixth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# BERNESE MOUNTAIN DOG



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use thinning shears or curved shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Fourth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fifth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Wash any folds on face. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Sixth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog or cage dry.

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

# BICHON FRISE



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look)  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff as much as possible the legs, body and head .

**Tenth Step:****BODY/LEGS**

Use your shears.

- 1) Start at the base of the tail and trim the body about ½" to neaten up, but leaving the coat full and round.
- 2) Even out the underchest following the natural body lines.
- 3) After trimming and rounding the shoulders, blend into the front legs.
- 4) The hair on the back of the neck should flow smoothly into the shoulders. The shoulders should be rounded to blend into the legs.
- 5) Trim the front and rear legs so they are tubular.

**Eleventh Step:****THROAT**

- 1) Use your shears and following the shape of the skull, trim the back of the head fuller so it blends in with the surrounding areas.
- 2) Use your thinning shears to even out the throat area.

**Twelfth Step:****EYES/FACE/BEARD/HEAD/EARS**

- 1) Use your shears to clean up the bridge of the nose, but do not trim under the eyes.
- 2) Following the shape of the skull, trim the head leaving fullness in the back so it blends smoothly into the neck. The goal is to shape the head into a circle.
- 3) The ears should smoothly flow into the sides of the head. The side of the head meshes with the ears without visible separation.
- 4) Use thinning shears to trim under the ears so the ears fall flat.

**Thirteenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

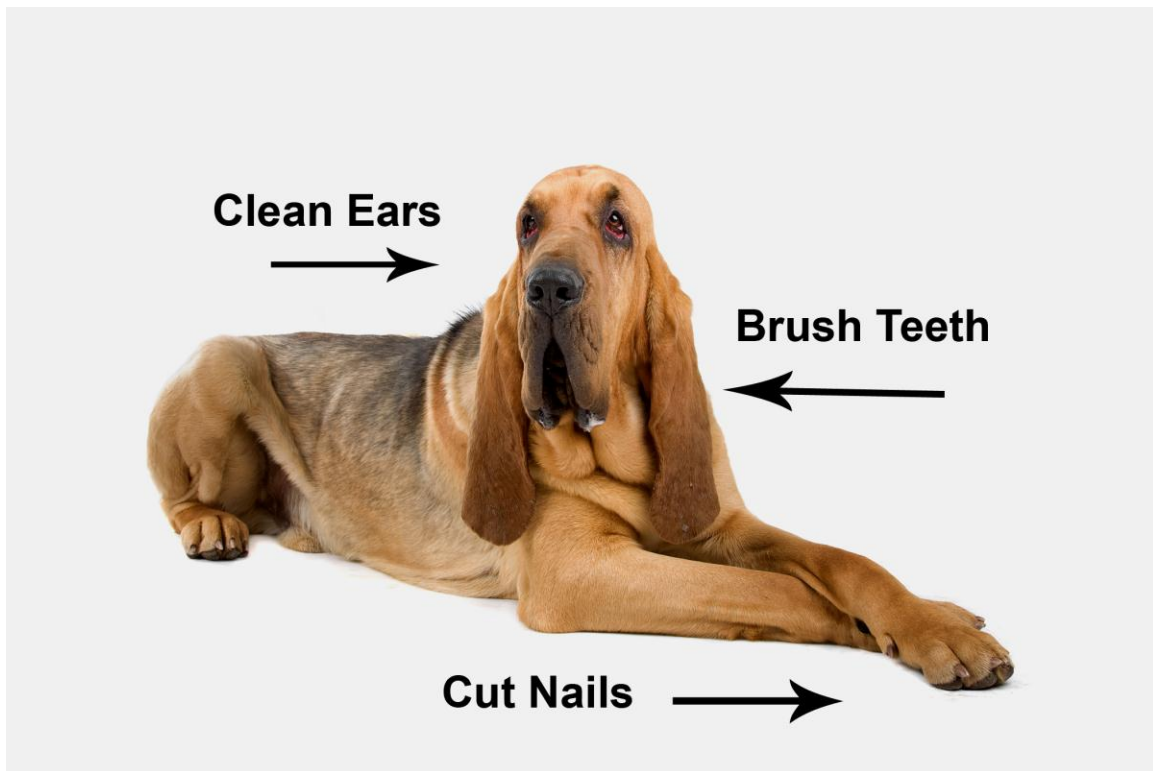
Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and  
watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!  
And watch the Bichon streaming video.**

## **Notes**

# BLOODHOUND



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, pad moisturizer, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.



**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Clean wrinkles on body. Wash any folds on face. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Use pad moisturizer to help soothe sore or bald spots on elbows, joints and pasterns.

**Eighth Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat to bring out natural sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:** Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# BLUETICK COONHOUND



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears to clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat to create sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# BORDER COLLIE



Clean Ears

Brush Teeth

Brush Through Entire Coat With a Slicker Brush. Use Dematting Comb on Any Tangled Areas

Cut Nails & Use Thinning Shears to Remove any Hair Growing Around the Feet And Between Toes

## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake

Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use thinning shears or curved shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Fourth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fifth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Sixth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Seventh Step:**

Comb and fluff.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Ninth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. Call mom or dad and have him/her picked up.

# BORDER TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb

Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana



**First Step:**

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Sixth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Seventh Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Eighth Step:**

Comb and fluff.

**Ninth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to lightly trim hair on cheeks, blending it into the throat.

**Tenth Step:**

Use you thinning shears to thin between the ears. Use your shears to trim the outside edges of the ears.

**Eleventh Step:**

Use your shears to trim outer eyebrow area, jutting away from the eye.

**Twelfth Step:**

Use your shears to trim a straight edge on the legs.

**Thirteenth Step:**

Use your shears to taper the tail to a rounded point at the end, leaving the base heavy.

**Fourteenth Step:**

Use your shears to round off the feet.

**Fifteenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!



## **Notes**

# BORZOI



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade) on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads. Use thinning shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Fourth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing. Make sure you comb around the rectum/tail area.

**Fifth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Sixth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Brush and fluff hair in the direction of growth.

**Ninth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. Call mom or dad and him/her picked up.

# BOSTON TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

### Third Step:

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Clean wrinkles on body. Wash any folds on face. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to blow dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat to create sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# BOUVIER DES FLANDRES



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #7F, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff.

**Tenth Step:**  
**BODY/FEET**

- 1) Use your thinning shears to remove any extra fullness on the neck, chest and legs.
- 2) Use your #7F blade to lightly skim over the entire body to even out coat, creating a smooth flowing appearance between areas.
- 3) Use your shears to round off the outside edges of the feet.

**Eleventh Step:**  
**HEAD/EARS**

- 1) Use your #10 blade to clip the hair on the outside and inside of the ears at the base.
- 2) Use your shears to trim the outside edges of the ears.
- 3) With thinning shears, trim the top of the head and the sides of the face.

**Twelfth Step:**  
**FACE/BEARD**

- 1) Use your thinning shears to thin the sides of the face.
- 2) Use your shears to even out the beard by combing it forward and trimming.
- 3) Comb the hair above the eyes forward and trim any uneven hair with your shears.

**Thirteenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

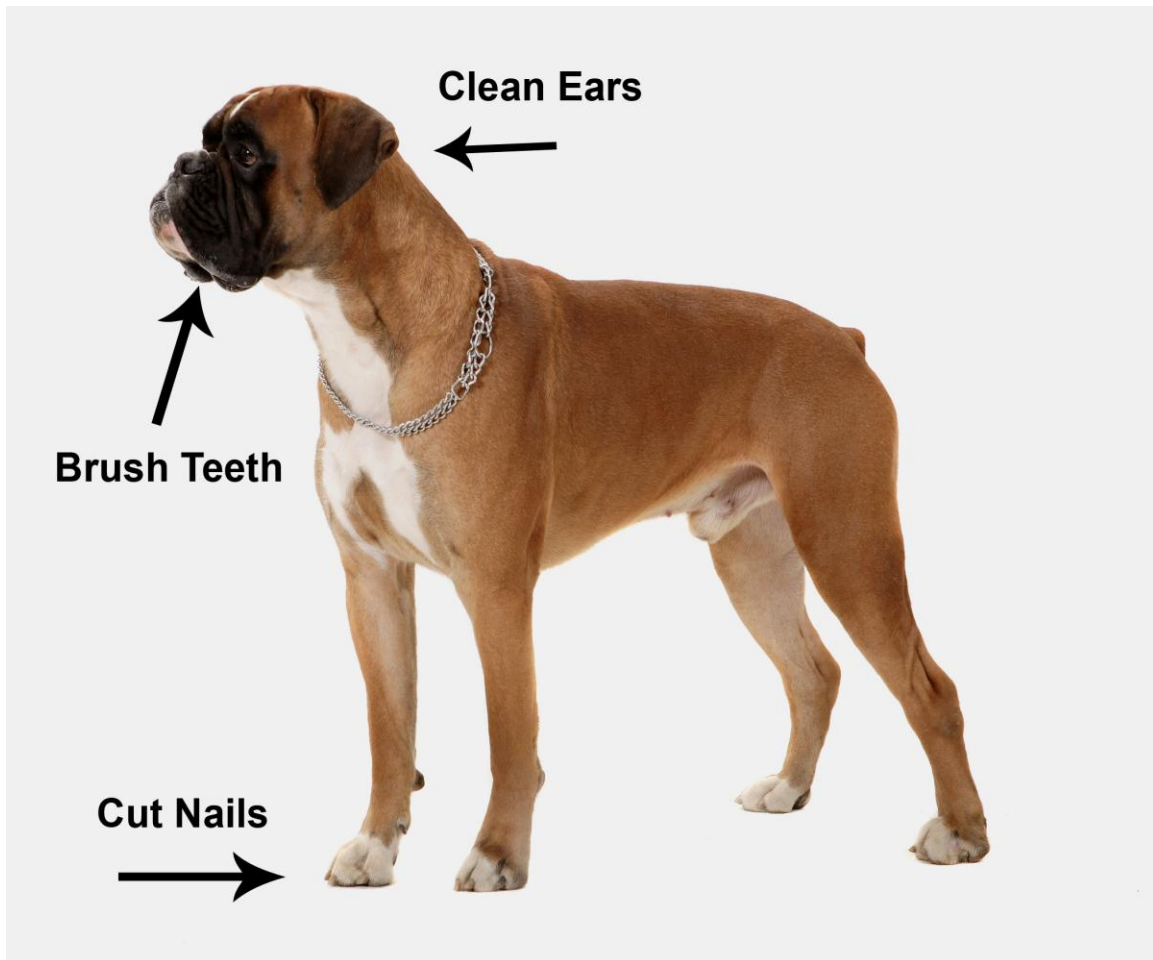
Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!



## **Notes**

# BOXER



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Clean wrinkles on body. Wash any folds on face. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat for a natural gloss. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# BOYKIN SPANIEL



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears to clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage into coat to create sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# BRIARD



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½” inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff.

**Tenth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to clean up straggly hair on the back.

**Eleventh Step:**

Use your shears to create a square line above the eyes and to evenly square off the beard.

**Twelfth Step:**

Use your shears to round off the feet.

**Thirteenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>



## **Notes**

# BRITTANY SPANIEL



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #7F, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area 1/2" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Sixth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Seventh Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Eighth Step:**

Comb and fluff.

**Ninth Step:****BODY/NECK/FEET**

- 1) Use your thinning shears to even out hair on the back and remove any unruly hair.
- 2) Use your thinning shears to remove straggly hair from the hocks to the bottom of the feet.
- 3) Use your #7F blade to trim the front of the neck so it looks smooth.

- 4) Use your thinning shears to blend the long hair on the back of the neck with the short hair underneath the neck.
- 5) Use your shears to even out the leg featherings.
- 6) Use your thinning shears to trim the hair between the toes.

**Tenth Step:**

**EARS/FACE**

- 1) Use your thinning shears to remove unruly hair on both sides of the ears.
- 2) Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eleventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer**

**Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

# BRUSSELS GRIFFON



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb

Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

Thinning Blade (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

Clipper, #5F, #7F or 8 1/2, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½” inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Seventh Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff.

**Tenth Step:****BODY**

- 1) Use your #5F, #7F or #8 ½ blade and clip the back starting from the base of the skull and down to the base of the tail.
- 2) Use your #5F, #7F or #8 ½ blade and clip the sides of the neck to the shoulders and on to the elbows.
- 3) Use your #5F, #7F, or #8 ½ blade and using the elbow as a guide, clip the sides of the body all the way to the rear flank.
- 4) Use your #5F, #7F, or # 8 1/2 blade to clip the back half of the leg to a neat point and stop just above the hock. Leave the front legs long, but use your shears to neaten up if necessary.
- 5) Use your #5F, #7F or #8 ½ blade to clip the neck, going from the throat to the breastbone on the forechest and then blending down to the elbows.
- 6) Use your shears to round off the outside edges of the feet.

**Eleventh Step:****HEAD/EARS/FACE**

- 1) Use your thinning shears to trim the top of the head.
- 2) Use your #10 blade to clip both side of the ears, starting at the base of the ears.
- 3) Use your thinning shears to trim the sides of the face.

**Twelfth Step:****EYEBROWS/BEARD**

- 1) Use your shears to trim the eyebrows so they look like an awning. Do not separate them. Start at the outside corner and trim evenly to the center.
- 2) Trim the beard rounded, but leave it full.

**Thirteenth Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

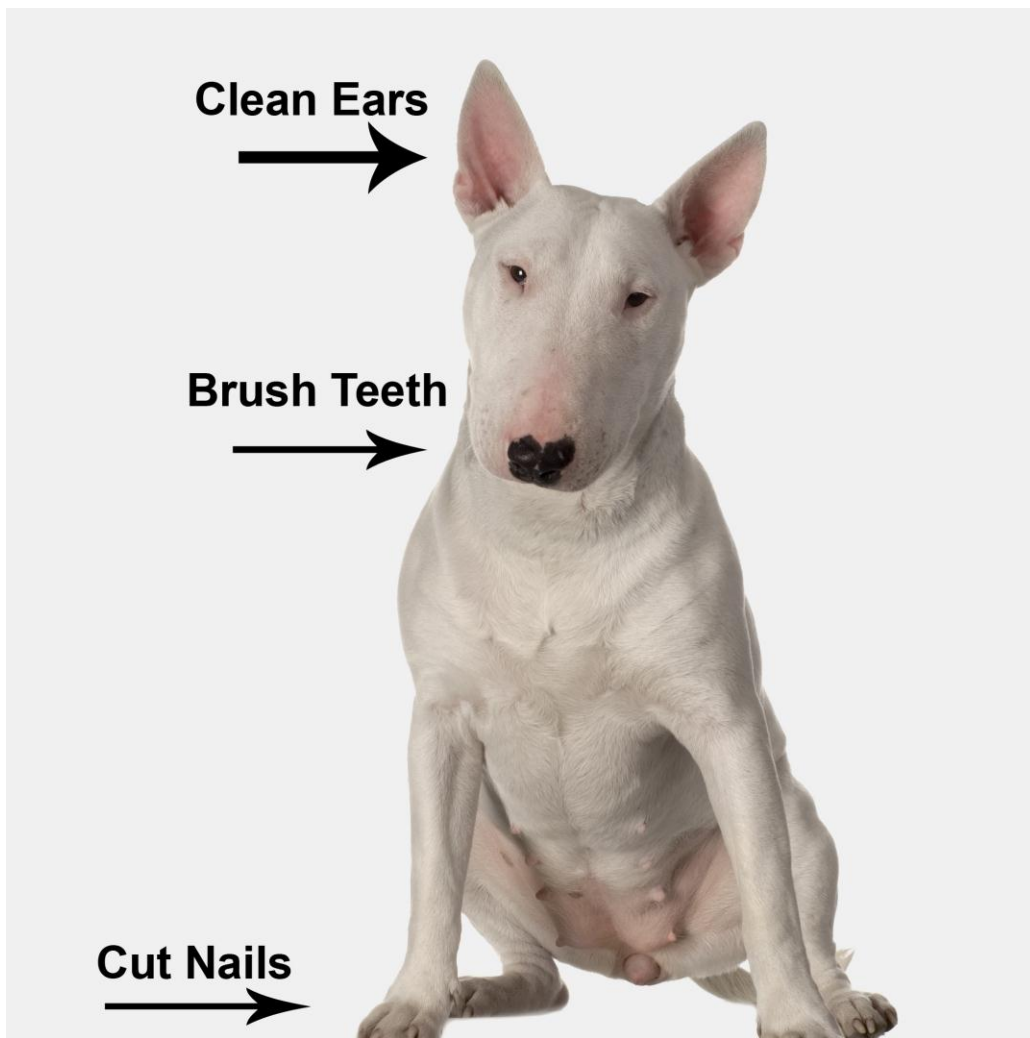
Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!



## **Notes**

# BULL TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

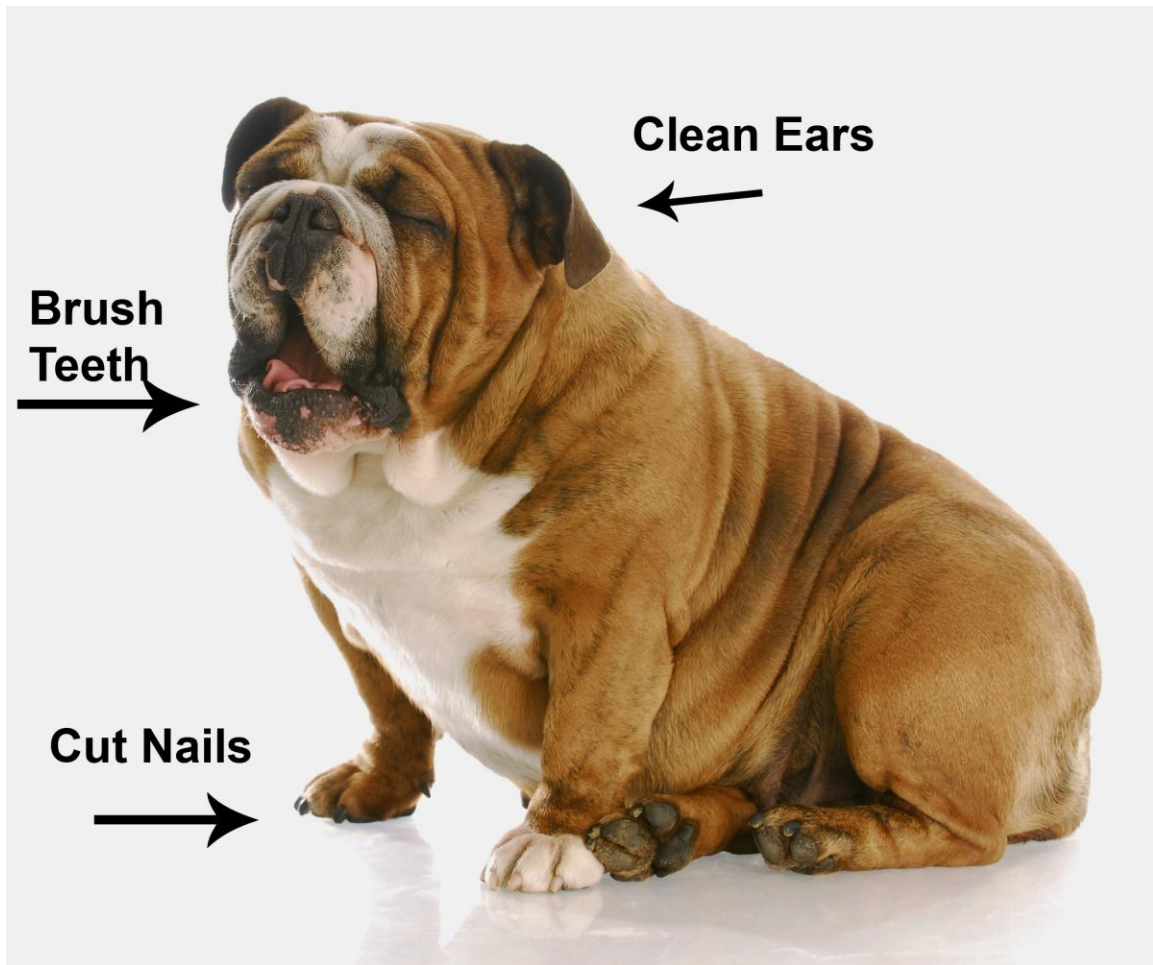
Hand rub conditioner onto coat Massage to create a sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# BULLDOG



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, baby powder conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush coat thoroughly.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Wash any folds on face. Clean wrinkles on body. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers.

**Seventh Step:**

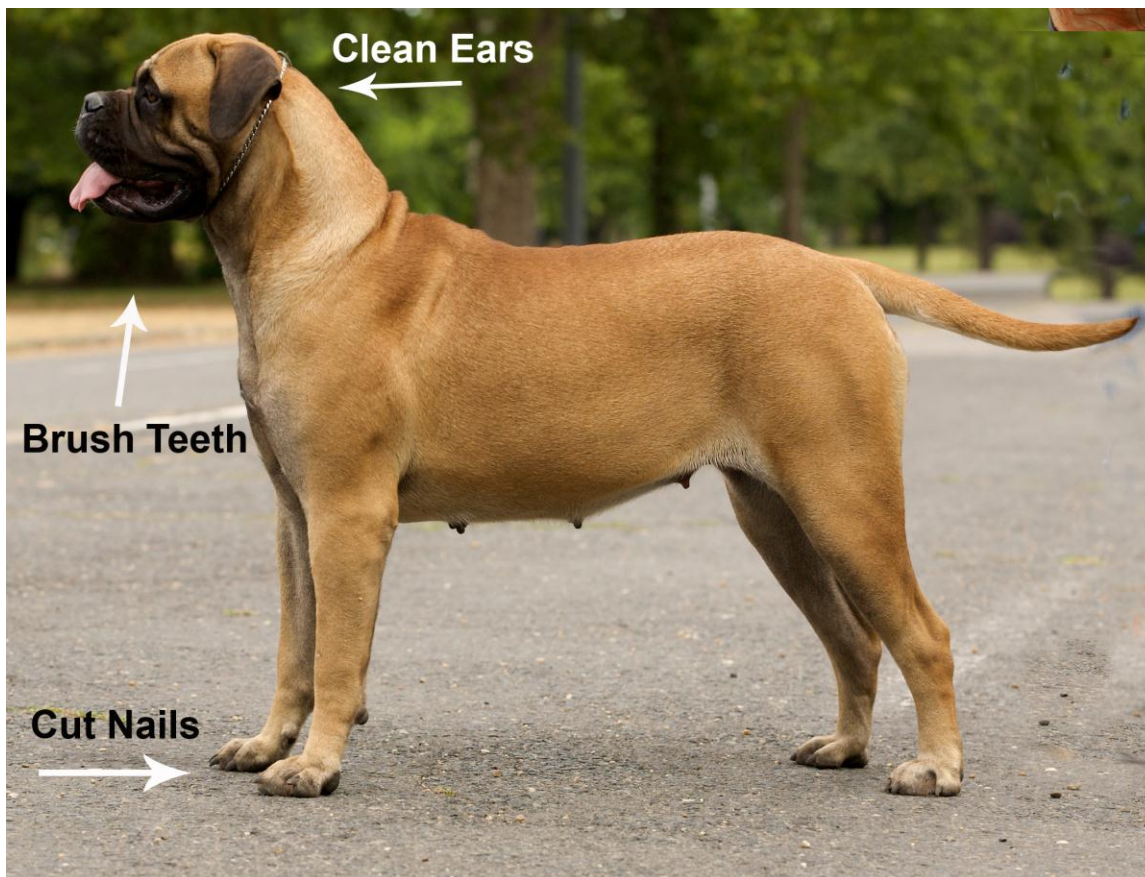
Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage to create sheen. You may also want to spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# BULLMASTIFF



## Tools Needed

Bristle Brush (Stiff)  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, baby powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails and be careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your brush and brush coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Wash any folds on face. Clean wrinkles on body. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers.

**Seventh Step:**

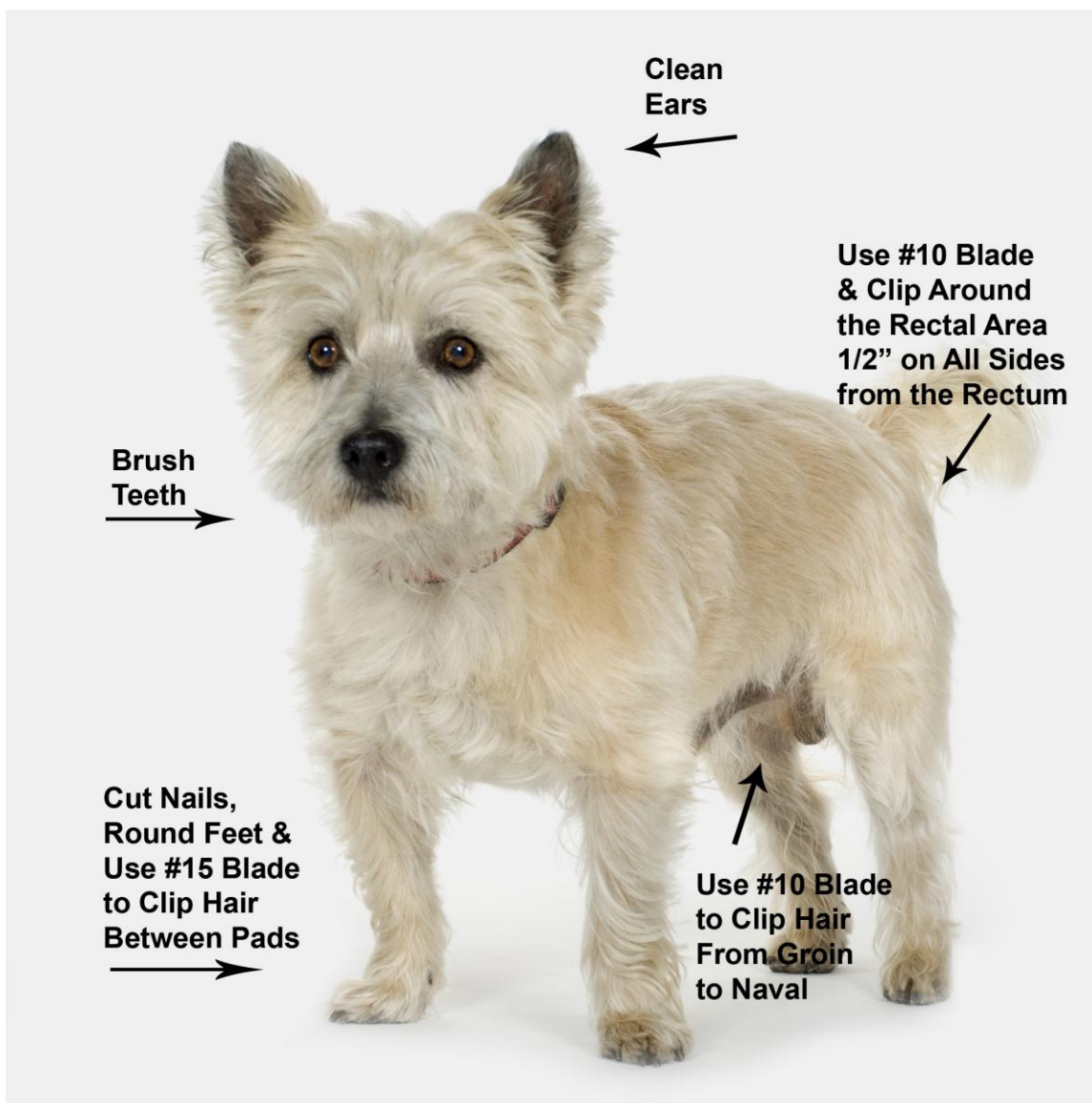
Hand rub conditioner onto coat to create sheen. You may also want to spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# CAIRN TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Blade (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #5F, #7F or 8 ½, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana



**First Step:**

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½” inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Seventh Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:****BODY**

- 1) Use your #5F, #7F or #8 ½ blade and clip the back starting from the base of the skull and down to the base of the tail.
- 2) Use your #5F, #7F or #8 ½ blade and clip the sides of the neck to the shoulders and on to the elbows.
- 3) Use your #5F, #7F, or #8 ½ blade and using the elbow as a guide, clip the sides of the body all the way to the rear flank.
- 4) Use your #5F, #7F, or # 8 1/2 blade to clip the back half of the leg to a neat point and stop just above the hock. Leave the front legs long, but use your shears to neaten up if necessary.
- 5) Use your #5F, #7F or #8 ½ blade to clip the neck, going from the throat to the breastbone on the forechest and then blending down to the elbows.
- 6) Use your shears to round off the outside edges of the feet.
- 7) Clip the tail from the base to the tip, only on the top of the tail, and using the Same blade length you used for the body. Do not clip the hair underneath the tail.

**Eleventh Step:****HEAD/EARS/FACE**

- 1) Use your thinning shears to trim the top of the head.
- 2) Use your #10 blade to clip both side of the ears, starting at the base of the ears.
- 3) Use your thinning shears to trim the sides of the face.

**Twelfth Step:****EYEBROWS/BEARD**

- 3) Use your shears to trim the eyebrows so they look like an awning. Do not separate them. Start at the outside corner and trim evenly to the center.
- 4) Trim the beard rounded, but leave it full.

**Thirteenth Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

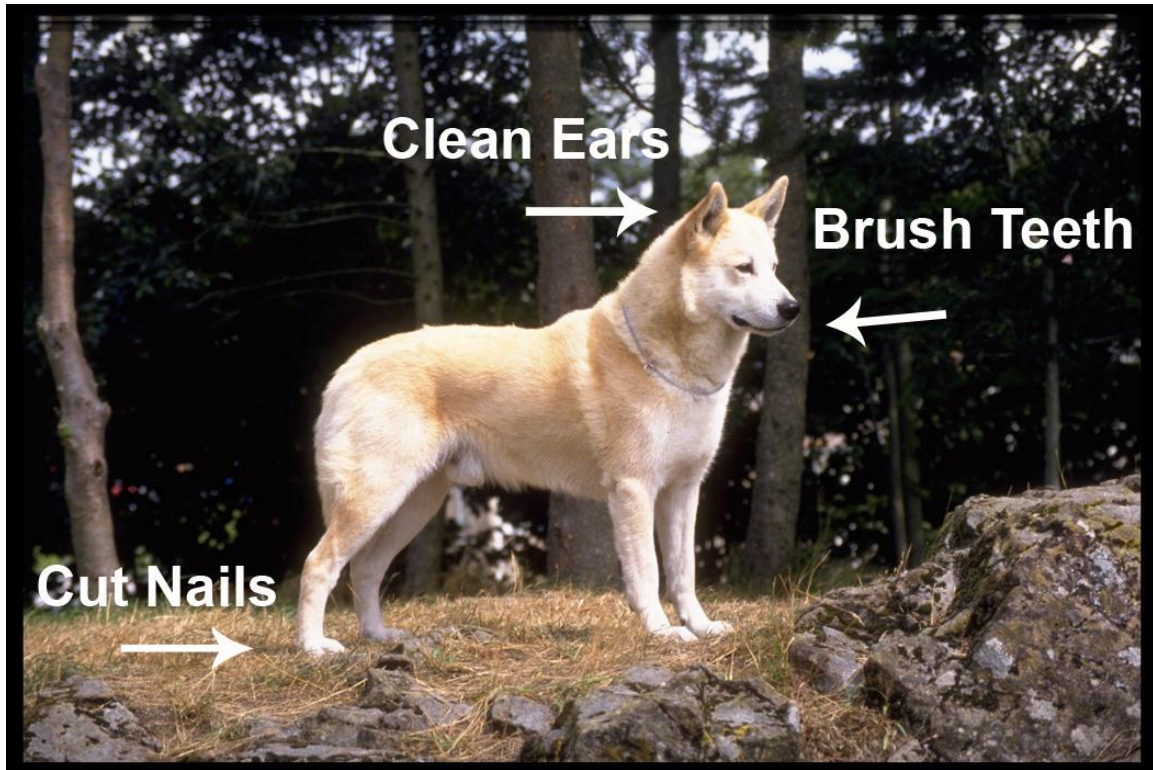
Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!  
And watch the Cairn Terrier streaming video.**

## **Notes**

# CANAAN



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Shedding Blade  
Nail Clipper

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### **Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. Remove any dead hair with your shedding blade.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

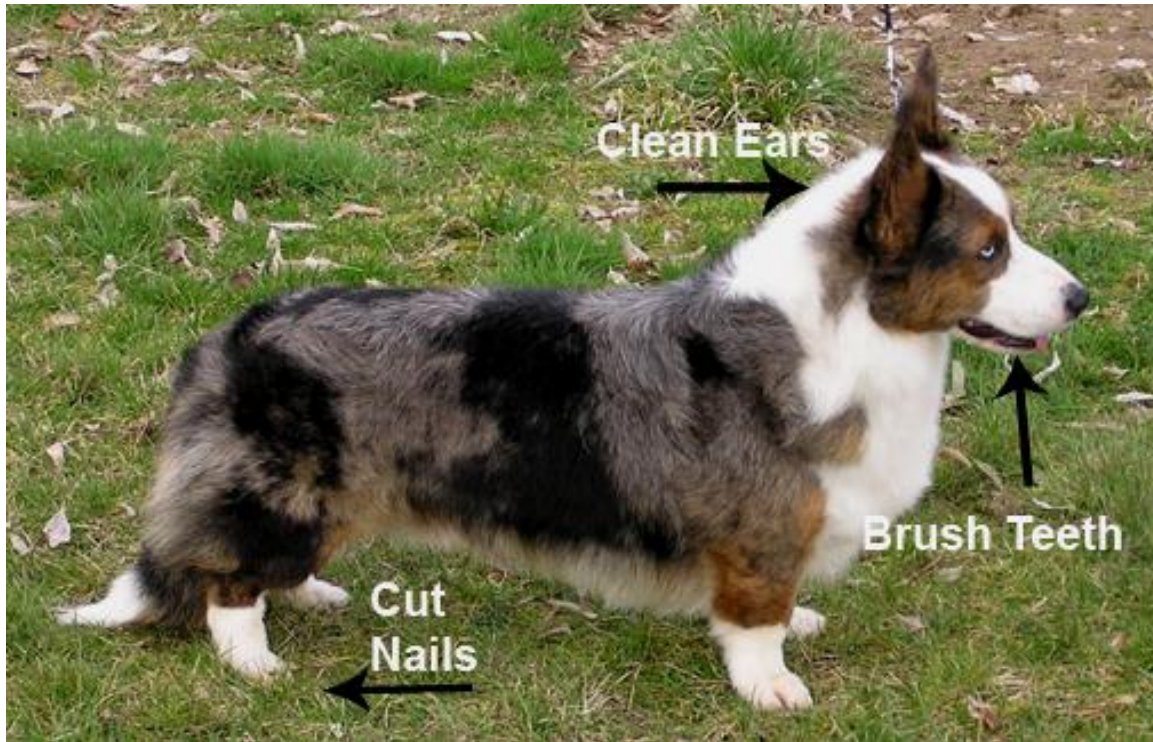
**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

# CARDIGAN WELSH CORGI



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

### Third Step:

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!



# CAVALIER KING CHARLES SPANIEL



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 Blade, #15 or #40 Blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana



**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade) on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads. Use thinning shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Fourth Step:**

For your sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!.

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to clip hair from groin to naval.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly.

**Ninth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Tenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb and fluff body, feather tail and legs. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

# CHESAPEAKE BAY RETRIEVER



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush, Nail Clipper

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

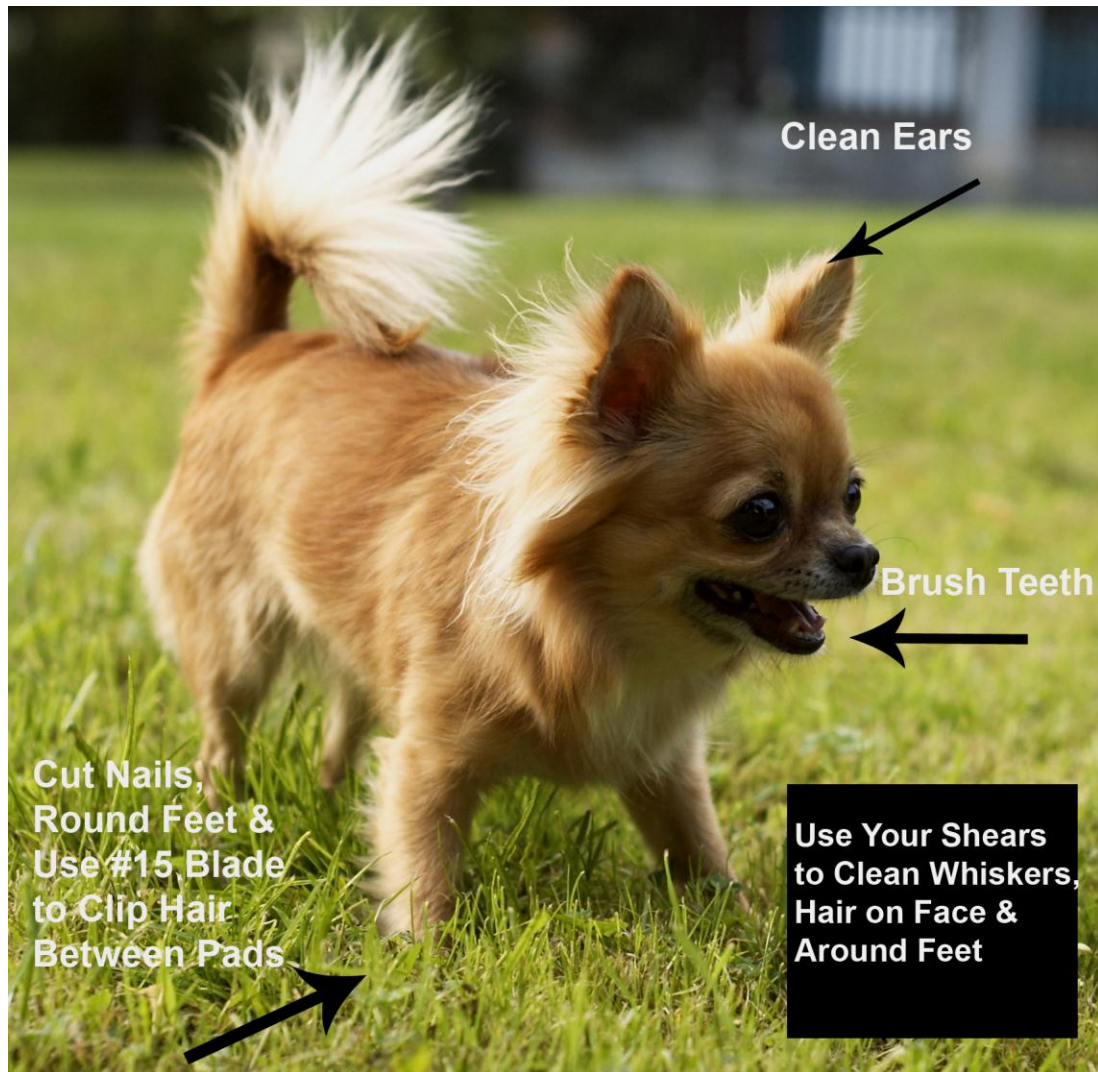
Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage to create sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

## CHIHUAHUA (LONG COAT)



### Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade) on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads. Use thinning shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Fourth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fifth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Sixth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Seventh Step:**

Comb and fluff.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle. Clean up outside edges of feet so they are rounded.

**Ninth Step:**

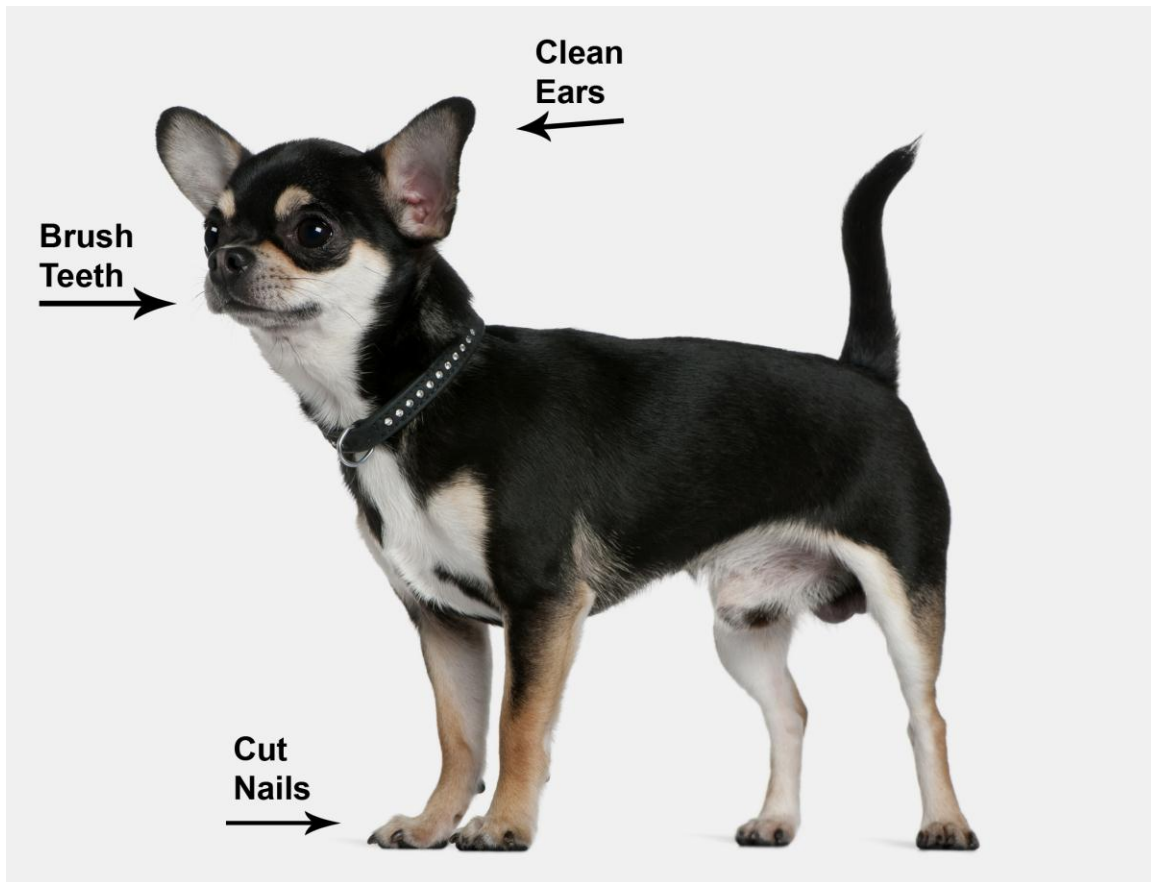
Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. Call mom or dad and him/her picked up.



## CHIHUAHUA (SMOOTH COAT)



### Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

#### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

#### **Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.



**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage to create sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

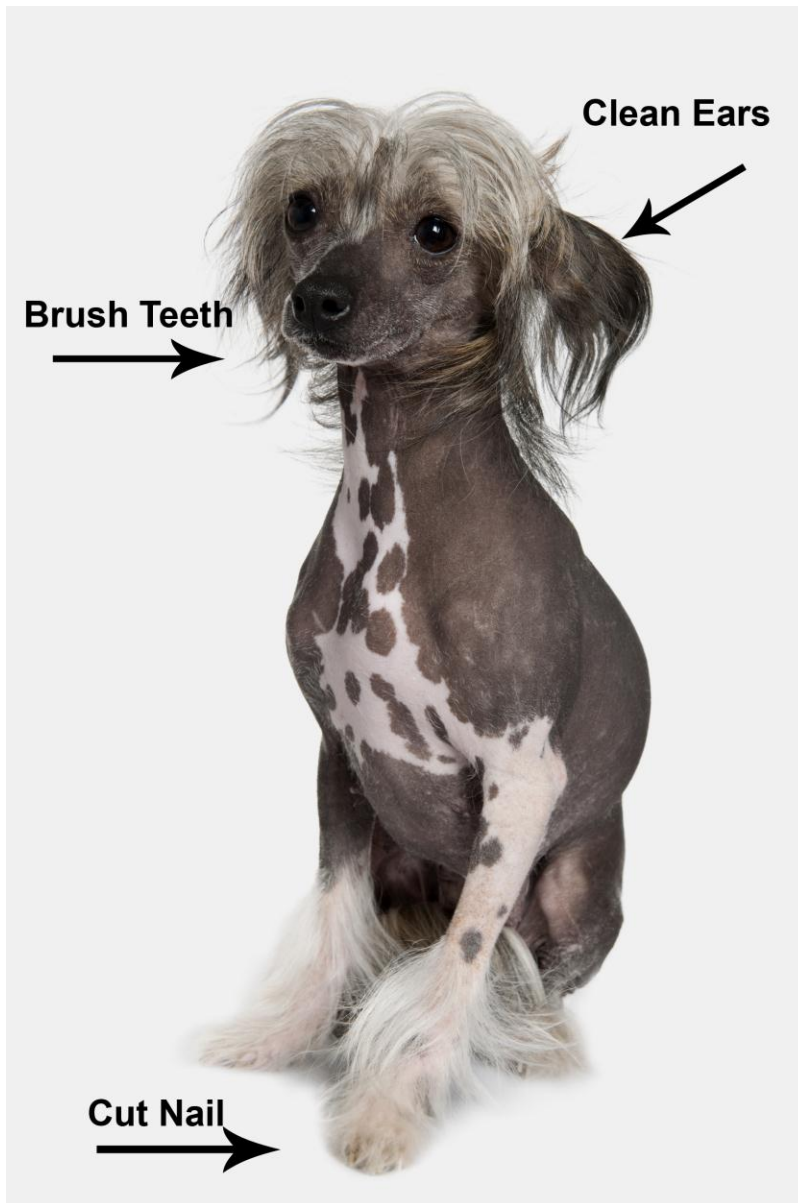
<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

# CHINESE CRESTED (HAIRLESS)

\*CHINESE CRESTED POWDERPUFF



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, lanolin conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush head and paws thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. For the Powderpuff use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry .

**Sixth Step:**

Comb and fluff. Pay special attention to the head, mane, legs and tail.

**Seventh Step:**

Use your lanolin conditioner and massage into skin. For the Powderpuff comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Note: Style the CHINESE CRESTED POWDER PUFF like the Maltese.**

The Powder puff variety has a long silky coat. It can be any color or combination of colors.

# CHINESE SHAR-PEI



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, baby powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### **Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

### **Third Step:**

Use rubber brush to brush entire body to remove debris.

### **Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Wash any folds on face. Clean wrinkles on body. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry. Use baby powder to keep wrinkles dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto body. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

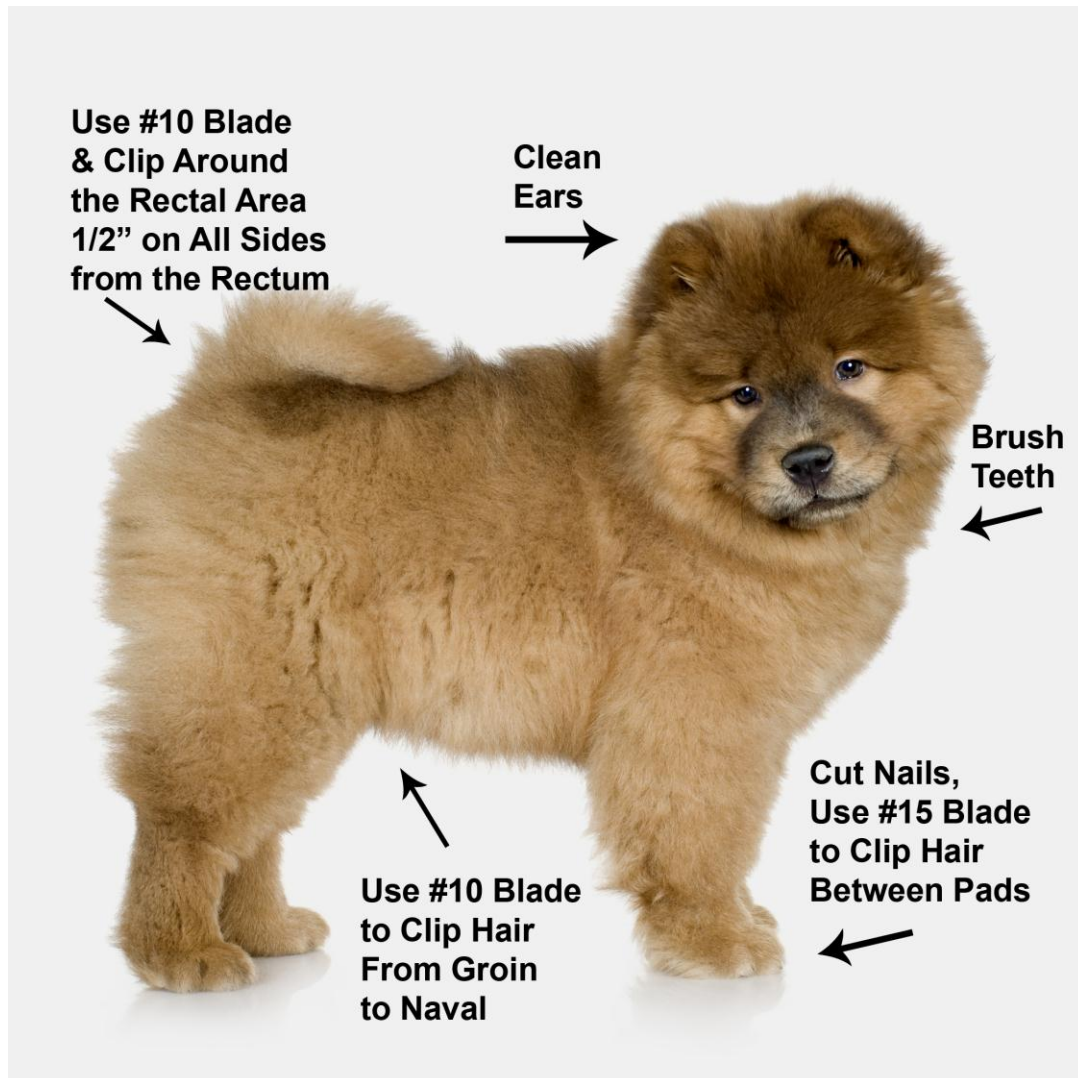
**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

# CHOW CHOW



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade) on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads. Use thinning shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade and clip the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff.

**Tenth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face.

**Eleventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb and fluff again, this time going upwards, paying attention to the mane, ruff and chest. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Also, watch the Chow Chow streaming video for free.**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>



## **Notes**

# CLUMBER SPANIEL



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Seventh Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:****BODY/LEGS/FEET**

- 1) Use your thinning shears to trim any unruly hair from the body so the coat lies flat.
- 2) Use your shears to even out featherings on legs, under the tail and beneath the chest.
- 3) Use your thinning shears to trim straggly hair from the end of the tail.
- 4) Use your thinning shears to remove hair from between the toes.
- 5) Use your shears to trim the outside edges of the feet.

**Eleventh Step:****EARS/FACE**

- 1) Use your thinning shears to trim straggly hair from the ears and cheeks.
- 2) Use your thinning shears to clean up the face. Leave it longer than a Cocker Spaniel.
- 3) Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face.

**Twelfth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

## COCKER SPANIEL (AMERICAN)



### Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb

Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

Clipper, #7F or #8 1/2 blade, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

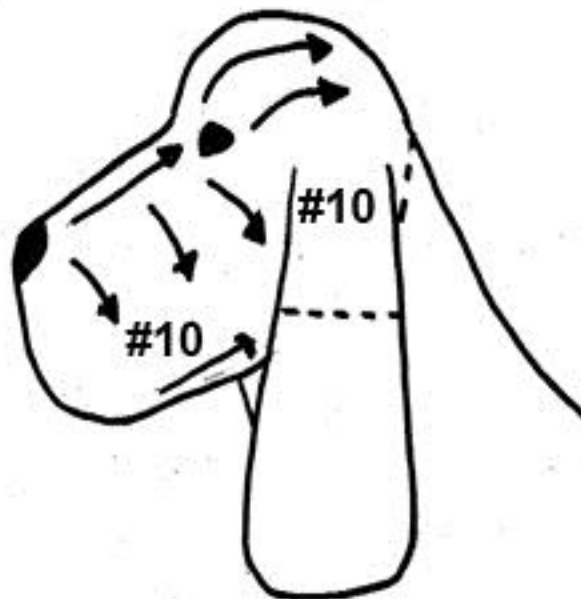
Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:**  
**BODY/LEGS/CHEST**

- 1) Use your #7F, #8 ½ or #10 blade to clip the top of the body from the base of the skull to the end of the tail. Clip the entire tail to make it look even all around.
- 2) Use your #7F, #8 ½ or #10 blade to clip and blend the rest of the body, including under the chest and sides, referring to the top of the shoulders as a baseline measurement. Follow the natural contours of the body.
- 3) Use your thinning shears to smooth out shoulder hair evenly into leg featherings.
- 4) Use your thinning shears to smooth out hindquarter hair evenly into rear leg featherings.
- 5) Use your straight shears to trim the front and back legs into a tubular shape.
- 6) Use your shears to round off feet.

**Eleventh Step:**  
**FACE/EARS/THROAT**

- 1) Use your #10 blade and going with the grain, trim the top of the head to the base of the skull, and around to the lower base of the ears. Trim the cheeks down and out to the corners of the ears. Starting at the nose, trim the snout up with the grain. Trim the muzzle downward.
- 2) Use your #10 blade to trim the top 1/3 of the ears on both sides. Thoroughly comb out the bottom 2/3 of the ears on both sides.
- 3) Use your #10 blade to trim under the jaw and the throat, creating a 'U' shape going from the ears and down the sternum. Trim around the lips.





**Twelfth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and  
watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!  
Also, watch the Cocker Spaniel streaming video.**

## COLLIE (ROUGH)



### Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake, Pin Brush (large)  
Nail Clipper Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fifth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Sixth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle. Use shears to clean up outside edges of ears.

**Eighth Step:**

Use thinning shears to reduce volume of hair near ears and on tail.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and then fluff with pin brush.

**Tenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner and brush again to fluff coat. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

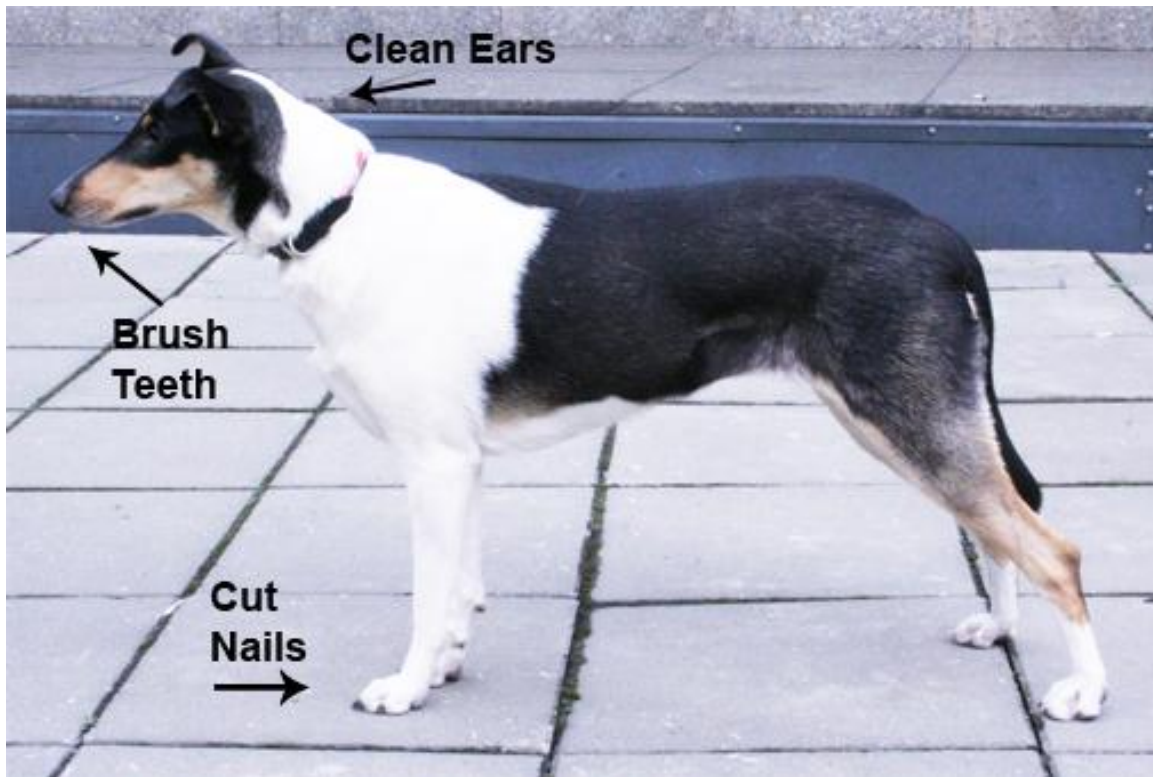
<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

## COLLIE (SMOOTH)



### Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Shedding Blade  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

#### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

#### **Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. Remove any dead hair with your shedding blade.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

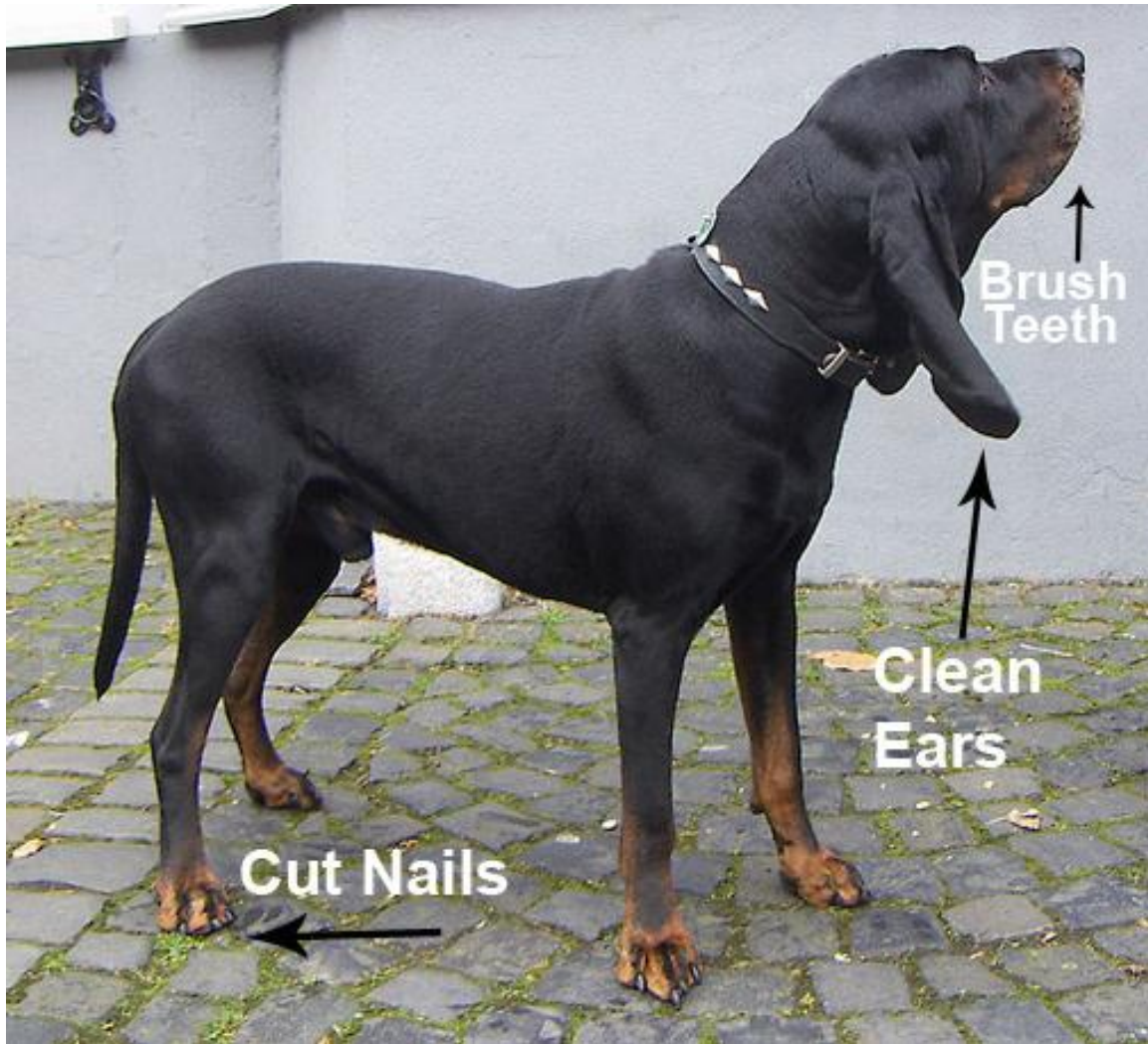
Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

## COONHOUND (Black & Tan)



### Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

#### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears to clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage into coat to create sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# CURLY- COATED RETRIEVER



## Tools Needed

Bristle Brush (stiff), Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder to lightly dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your bristle brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Use shears to even out any curls on the entire body, including the head and ears, that aren't lying flat. Curls taper to a point at the end of the tail.

**Eighth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. As you do your final brush, use circular motion to evenly distribute conditioner throughout coat. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

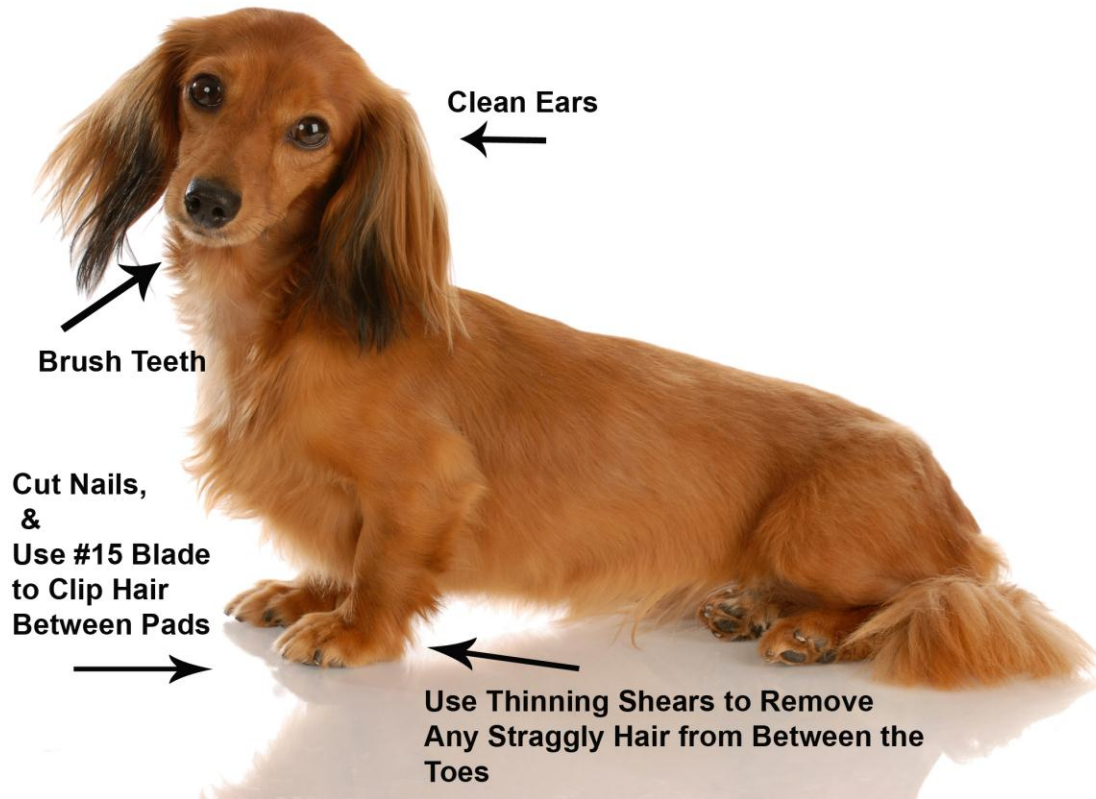
**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

## **DACHSHUND (Longhaired)**

### **\*Wire Haired or Smooth**



## **Tools Needed**

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**\* On the Wire Haired Dachshund** use your shears to even out hair around outside edges of the feet, and the featherings on the coat. Use thinning shears to trim fringe off of the tail and hock.

**For the Smooth Dachshund,** eliminate step seven.

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade) on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads. Use thinning shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Fourth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fifth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Sixth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Seventh Step:**

Comb and fluff out hair paying extra attention to the ears, legs and tail.

**Eighth Step:**

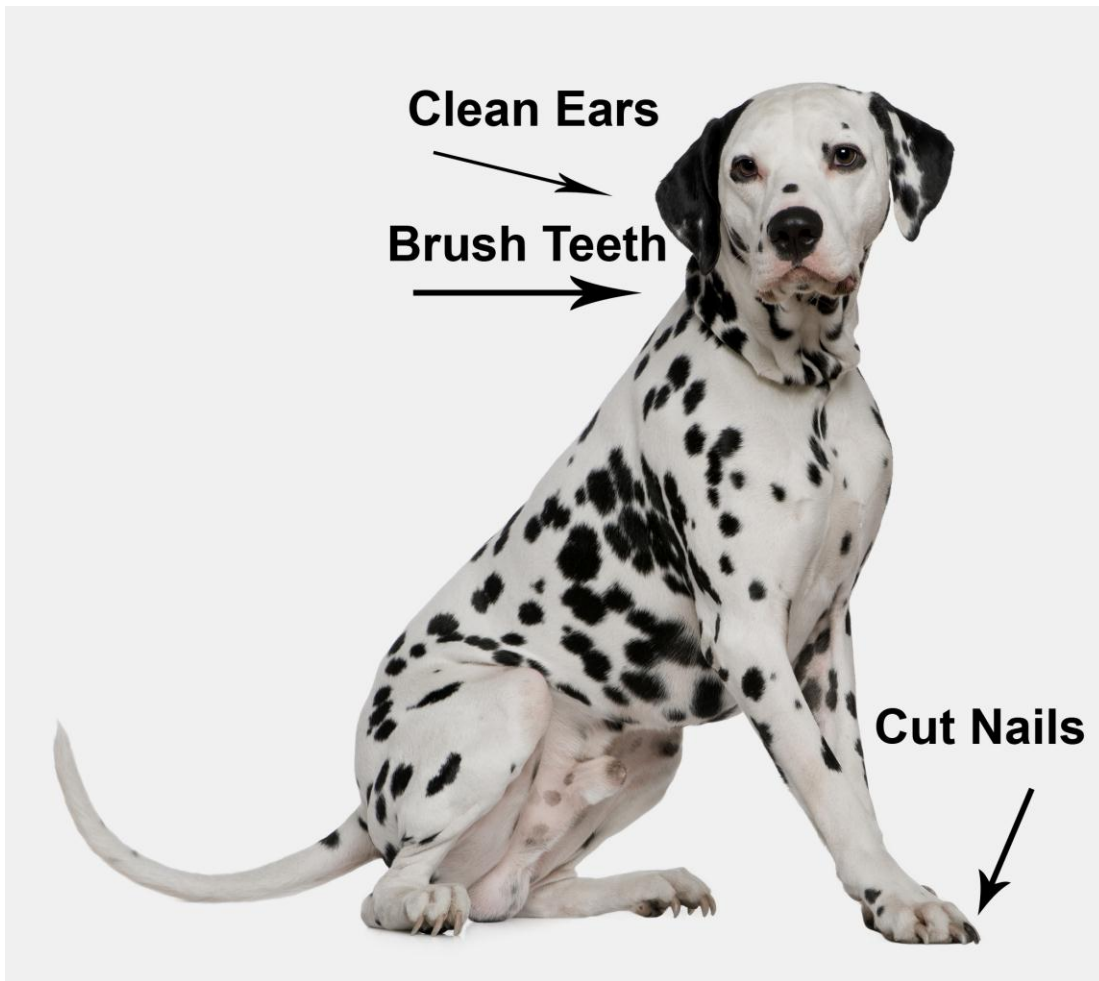
Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Ninth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:** Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# DALMATIAN



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

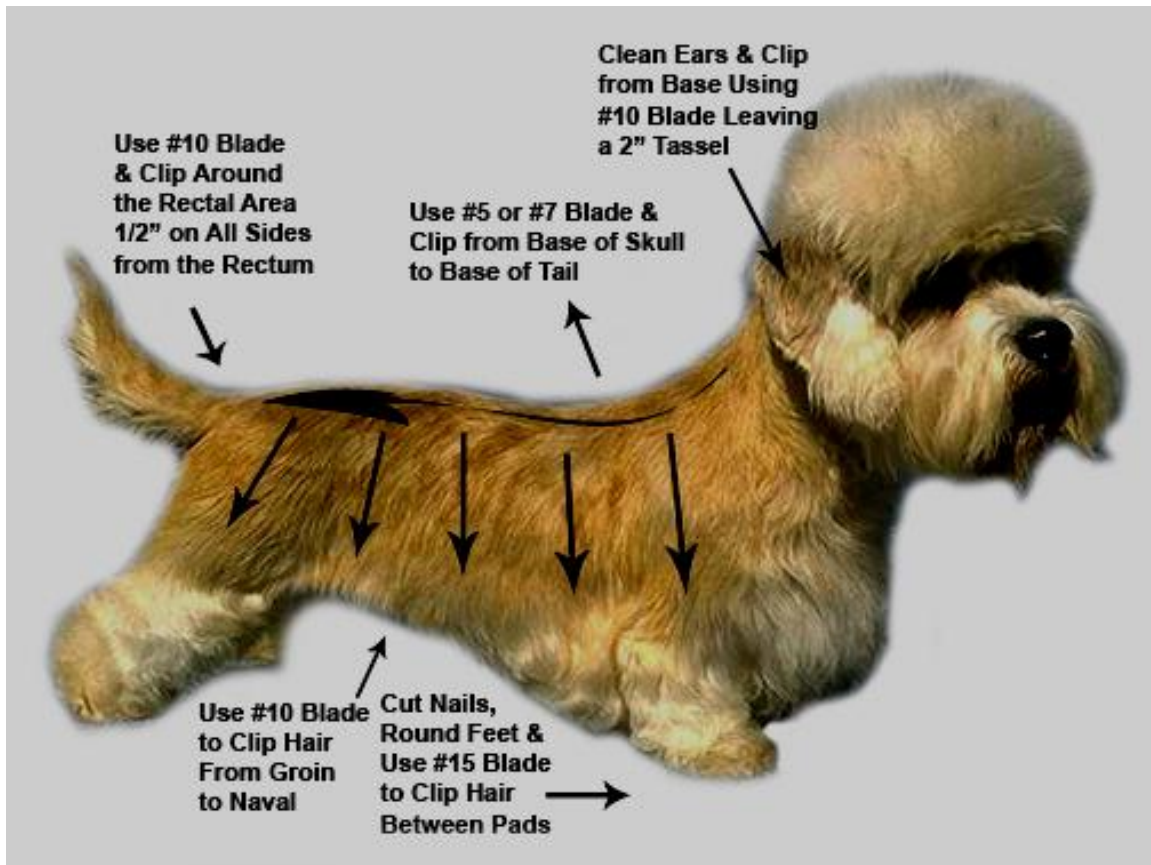
Hand rub conditioner onto coat. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# DANDI DINMONT TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #5F or #7F blade, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:****BODY/LEGS**

1) Use your #5F or #7F blade. Start at the base of the skull and trim all the way down the back to the base of the tail.

2) Use your #5F or #7F blade, and using the shoulders as a marker, trim the sides of the neck from the top of the shoulder, trimming the sides down to the flank and over the rump.

- 3) Use your shears to trim the forechest leaving the fullness.
- 4) Use your shears on the underchest. As you even out the hair, create a slight incline from elbow to flank.
- 5) Use your thinning shears to smooth out the line between the legs and the body.
- 5) Use your shears to round off the feet.



**Eleventh Step:**  
**HEAD/FACE/EARS**

- 1) Use your #10 blade to clip the top of the muzzle, starting just below the eyes at the stop and clipping toward the nose.
- 2) Use your #10 blade to trim the ears on both sides; starting at the base and making sure you leave a tassel on the end of each ear. (See Bedlington Terrier for direction on tassels.)
- 3) Use your shears to clean up the edges of the ears, but leave the tassel untrimmed.
- 4) Use your comb and fluff the hair on the head. Use your shears to neaten it up, but leave it rounded and high.

**Twelfth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# DOBERMAN PINSCHER



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush, Bristle Brush (stiff)  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# ENGLISH COCKER SPANIEL



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #7F, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step: BODY/LEGS/CHEST**

1) Use your #7F blade to trim the top of the body from the base of the skull to the end of the tail.

- 2) Use your #7F blade to trim and blend the rest of the body, including under the chest and the sides, referring to the top of the shoulders as a baseline measurement. Follow the natural contours of the body. Trim the tail to make it look even all around.
- 3) Use your thinning shears to smooth out shoulder hair evenly into leg featherings.
- 4) Use your thinning shears to smooth out hindquarter hair evenly into rear leg featherings.
- 5) Use your straight shears to trim the front legs into a cylinder shape.
- 6) Use your shears to round off feet.

#### **Eleventh Step:**

##### **FACE/EARS/THROAT**

- 1) Use your #10 blade and going with the grain, trim the top of the head, to the base of the skull, and around to the lower base of the ears. Trim the cheeks down and out to the corners of the ears. Starting at the nose, trim the snout up with the grain, & trim the muzzle downward.
- 2) Use your #10 blade to trim the top 1/3 of the ears on both sides. Thoroughly comb out the bottom 2/3 of the ears on both sides.
- 3) Use your #10 blade to trim the under the jaw and the throat, creating a 'U' shape going from the ears and down the sternum. Trim around the lips by stretching lower lip back and going against the grain.

#### **Twelfth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

#### **Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!



## **Notes**

# ENGLISH SETTER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #7F blade, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff dry featherings.

**Tenth Step:****BODY/LEGS/TAIL**

- 1) Use your #7 blade, and clip the coat lightly along the grain and following the contours of the body.
- 2) Using the same blade technique trim the sides of the neck to a point at the elbow at the front. Blend the sides to the bottom part of the rear hip.
- 3) Use your thinning shears to blend the sides and the legs.

- 4) Use your thinning shears to trim the hock down to the bottom of the foot.
- 5) Use your thinning shears to trim the hair between the toes.
- 6) Use your shears to clean up the outside edges of the feet.
- 7) The tail is tapered from the base to the tip. It shouldn't fall below the hock.
- 8) Use your thinning shears to trim any extra fullness from the top of the tail.

**Eleventh Step:**

**HEAD/FACE**

- 1) Measure your baseline from the shoulders. Use your #10 blade to trim under the jaw creating a 'U' shape that goes from the throat and outward to the ear. Clean around the lips by stretching the lower lip back towards the ears.
- 2) Use your shears to round off feet.

**Twelfth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer  
Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

# ENGLISH SPRINGER SPANIEL



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #7F, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

## Body



## Face



### **Tenth Step:** **BODY/LEGS/TAIL**

- 1) Use your #7F blade to trim the body along the grain, holding clipper at a right angle.
- 2) Use your #7F blade at a right angle & trim the sides of the neck, ending in a point at the elbow in front. Blend sides back to the rear and under the hips.
- 3) Use your #7F blade to trim the tail and blend in with the body.
- 4) Use your thinning shears to trim straggly hair from the hock to the bottom of the foot.
- 5) Use your thinning shears to trim the hair between the toes.



- 6) Use your shears to trim any unruly hair on the top and sides of feet. Neaten up the outside edges of the feet.

**Eleventh Step:**

**HEAD/FACE/EARS**

- 1) Use your #10 blade to trim from the top of the head to the base of the skull and trim around the ears to the base of the ear.
- 2) Use your #10 blade to trim the cheeks and face making sure you go with the grain and ending at the corners of the ears.
- 3) Use your #10 blade to trim from the stop along the foreface against the grain. Trim down the sides of the muzzle.
- 4) Use your #10 blade to trim the under the jaw to the throat, creating a 'U' shape going from ear to ear.
- 5) Use your #10 blade and trim the flews of the lips by stretching the lower lip back and going against the grain along the edge of the lips.
- 6) Use your #10 blade to trim the top third of the ears on both sides.

**Twelfth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer**

**Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

# ENGLISH TOY SPANIEL



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Dematting Comb or Rake, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade) on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads. Use thinning shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:** Use your #10 blade to trim hair from the groin to the naval.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas such as the legs, use your dematting comb or rake to remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Wash any folds on face. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eleventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

## **Become a Certified Pet Groomer**

### **Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

### **Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

### **Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

## FIELD SPANIEL



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade) on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads. Use thinning shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim hair from groin to naval.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and Fluff!

**Tenth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to clean up hair on face, and any curly hair on body, ears and tail.

**Eleventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Twelfth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>



## **Notes**

# FINNISH SPITZ



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris **Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your thinning shears on the hind legs from the hock to the feet.

**Ninth Step:**

Use thinning shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Tenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks. You're done!

# FLAT-COATED RETRIEVER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Shedding Blade  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. Remove all dead hair with your shedding blade.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

## FOX TERRIER (Smooth)



### Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle. Remember to trim any stray hair on the edges of the ears.

**Seventh Step:**

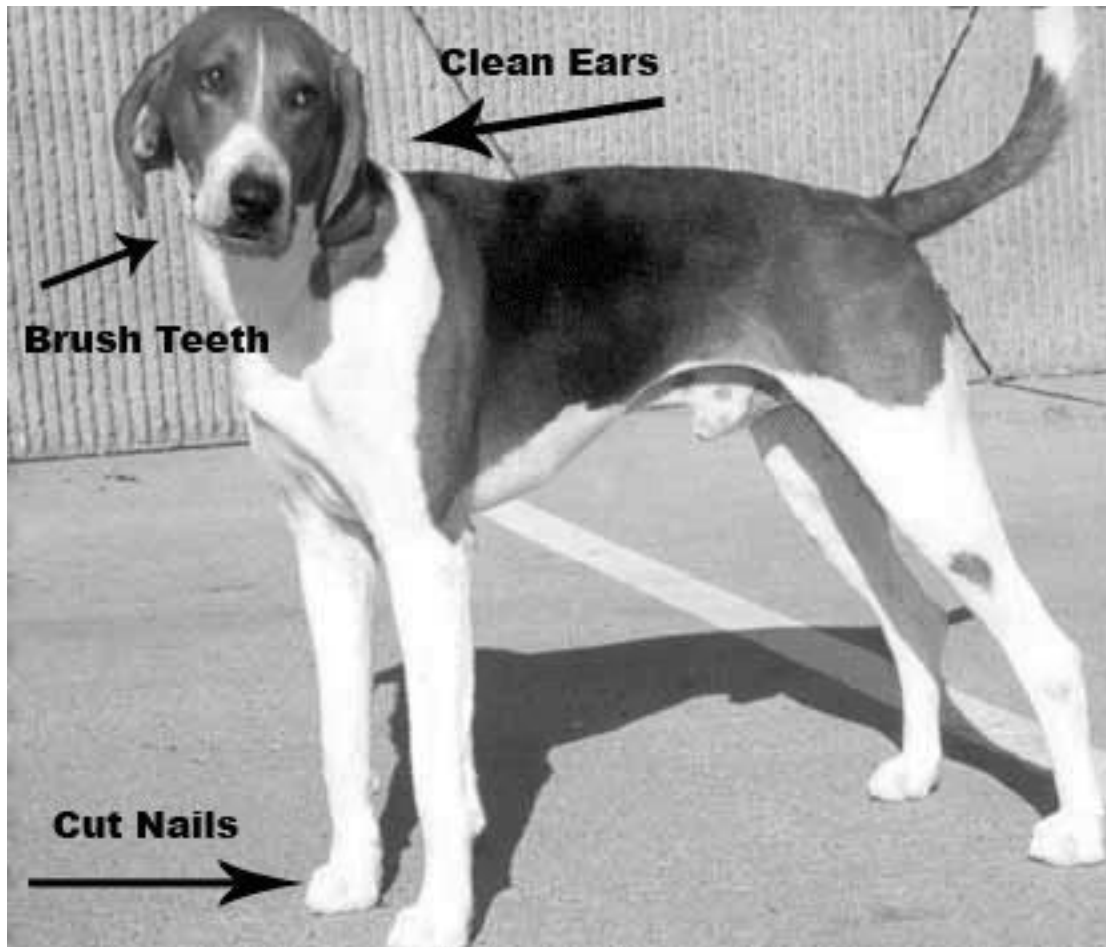
Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage into coat to create sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

## FOXHOUND (American)



### Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

#### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

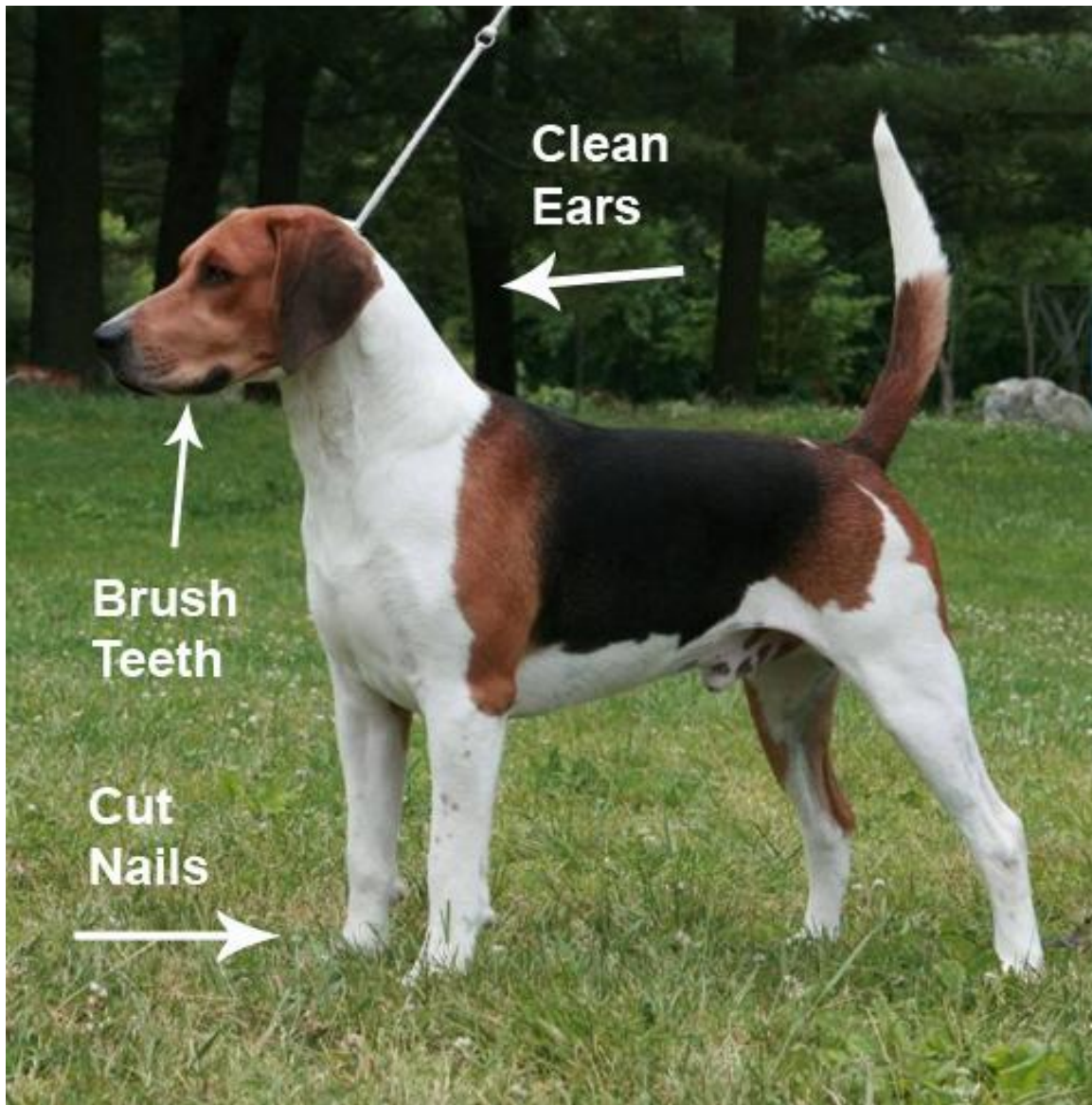
Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage into coat for sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

## FOXHOUND (English)



### Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage quickly for sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# FRENCH BULLDOG



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Wash any folds on face. Clean wrinkles on body. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

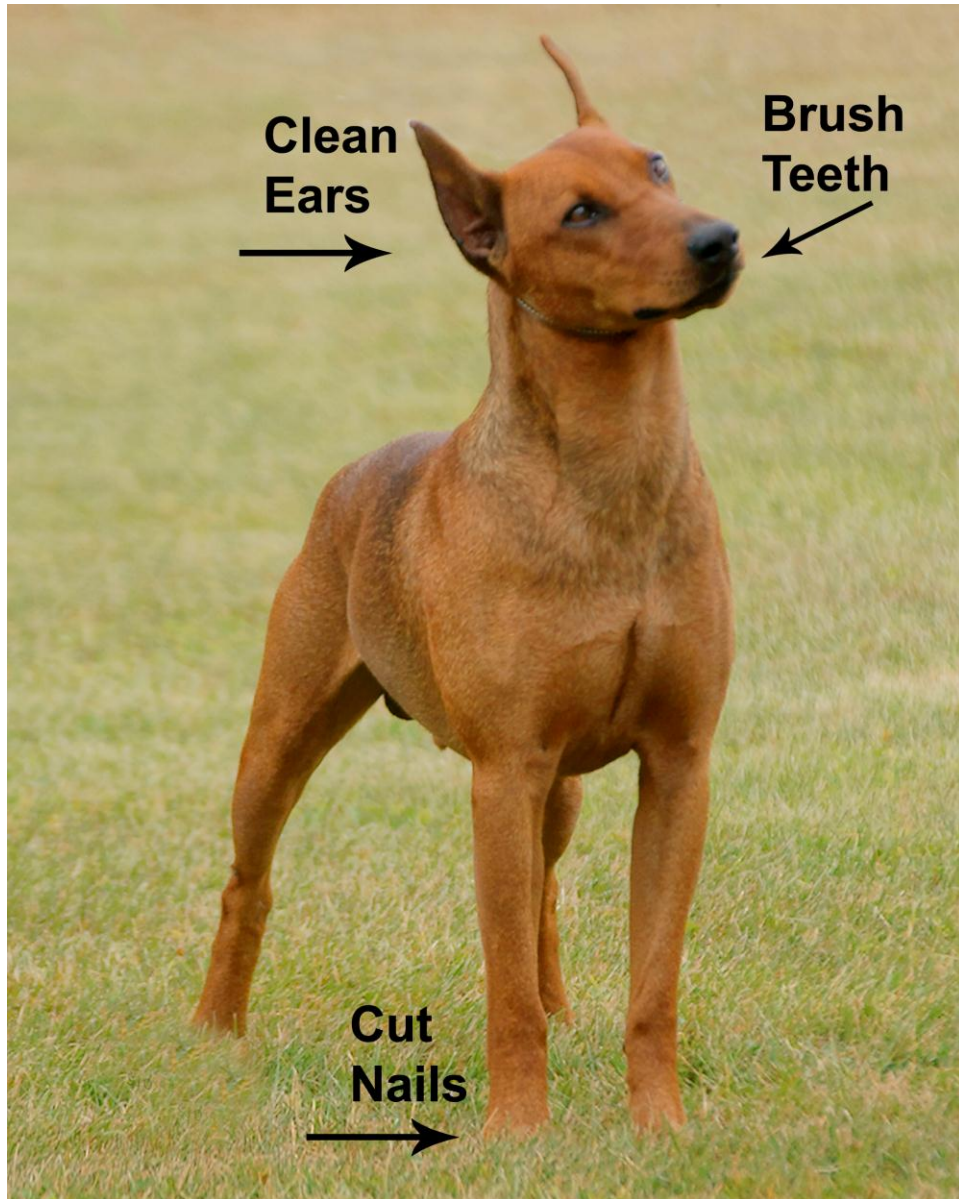
Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage into coat to create sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# GERMAN PINSCHER



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage it into coat to create a sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

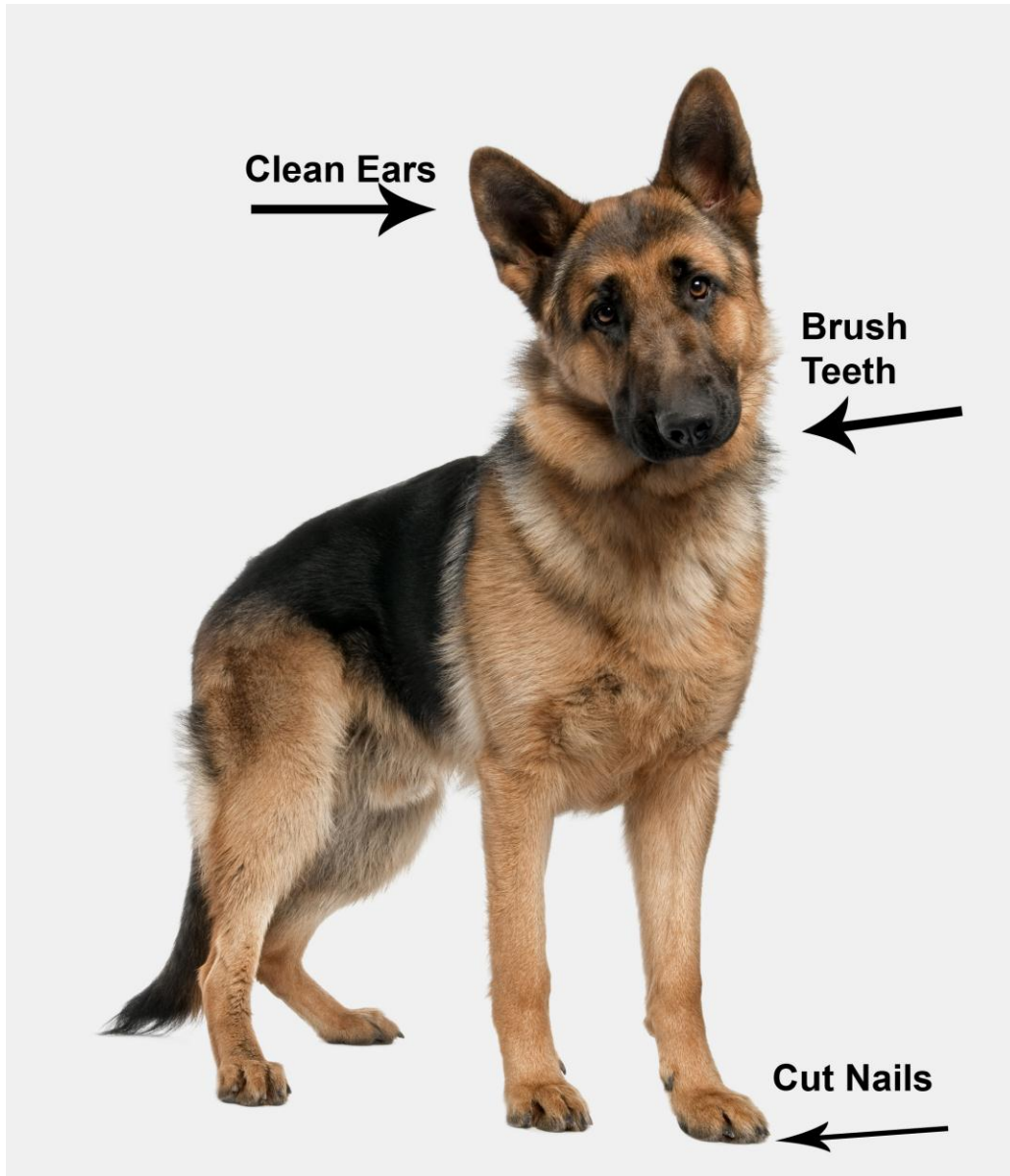
**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!



# GERMAN SHEPHERD



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Shedding Blade  
Nail Clipper

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.



**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. Remove all dead hair with your shedding blade.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

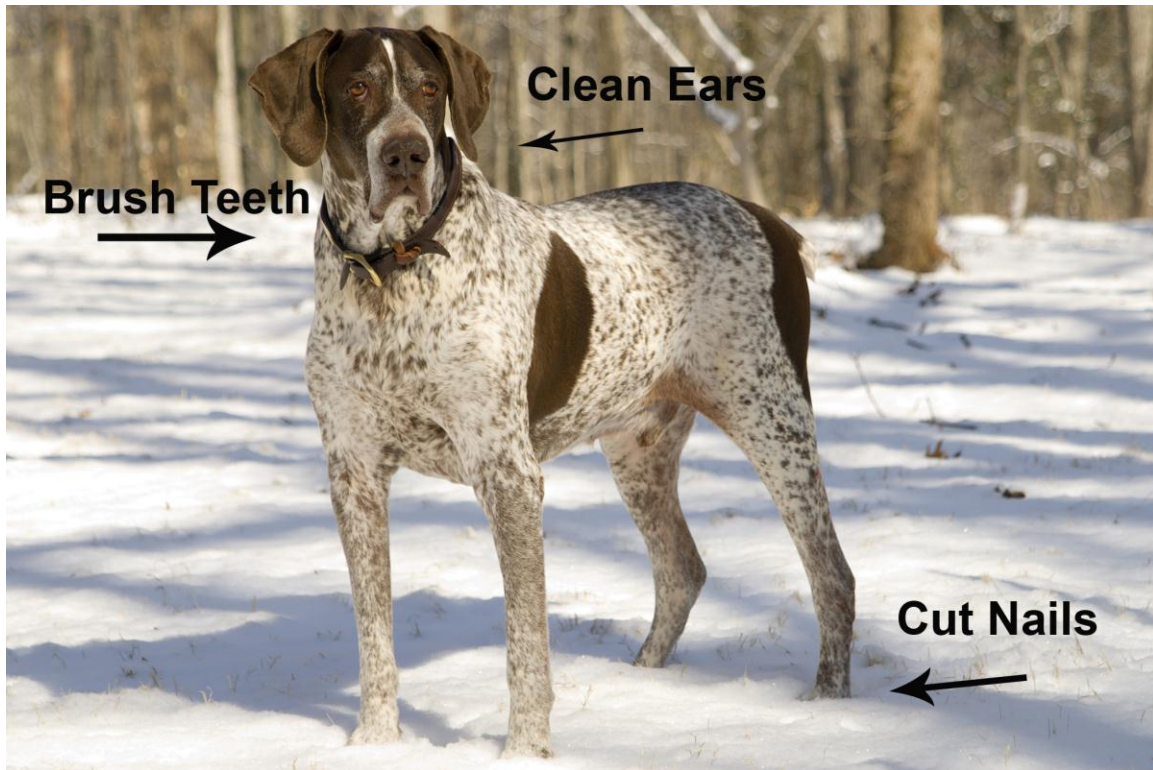
Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# GERMAN SHORTHAIRED POINTER



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush, Shedding Blade  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage into coat to create sheen. You may also want to spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# GERMAN WIREHAired POINTER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush

Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears,

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Wash any folds on face. Clean wrinkles on body. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your thinning shears or stripping knife to clean up straggly hair from body, top of head and ears.

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your shears or thinning shears to evenly trim eyebrows.

**Ninth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush coat. You may also want to spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!



## GLEN OF IMAAL TERRIER



### Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

**First Step:**

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade) on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads. Use thinning shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws to give them a nice rounded shape.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitation trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Sixth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Wash any folds on face. Clean wrinkles on body. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Seventh Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to make sure the hair on the body, forechest and legs is smooth and even.

**Ninth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to clean up any hair on the face, muzzle and under the chin. Trim the outside edges of the ears.

**Tenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School

1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>



## **Notes**

# GOLDEN RETRIEVER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to trim behind the ears. This breed tends to matt behind the ears. If you find mats behind the ears, go ahead and shave them out with a #10 blade or 7 skipped.

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and trim the leg fringe, and taper the tail to a point at the tip. Clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# GORDON SETTER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #7F blade, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Sixth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Seventh Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Eighth Step:**

Comb and fluff up the featherings.

**Ninth Step:****BODY/LEGS/TAIL**

- 1) Use your #7F blade, hold at a right angle to the dog's body, and going with the grain, trim following the contours of the body. Use the shoulder as your baseline.
- 2) Using the same blade and technique, trim the sides of the neck to a point at the front elbow.

- 3) Use your #7F blade to blend the sides of the body to the lower part of the hip at the rear.
- 4) Use your thinning shears to blend in the hair on the body and legs so it flows evenly.
- 5) Use your thinning shears to trim the hock to the bottom of the foot.
- 6) Use your comb to lift up the hair between the toes and use your thinning shears to make it level with the top of the foot.
- 7) Use your shears to trim the outside edges of the feet.
- 8) Use your thinning shears to trim the underside of the tail about 1/3 inch. Comb the featherings down. The tail tapers from wider at the base to a point at the tip. The tip should be above the hock.
- 9) Use your thinning shears to thin any extra fullness from the topside of the tail.

#### **Tenth Step:**

##### **FACE/EARS**

- 1) Use your #10 blade to trim the cheeks back to the corner of the ear.
- 2) Use your #10 blade to trim the foreface from the stop by the eyes, going against the grain. Trim down the sides of the muzzle.
- 3) Use your #10 blade to trim the underjaw down to the throat creating a 'U' shape at the throat from ear to ear. Clean the straggly hair around the lips.
- 4) Use your #10 blade to trim the top 1/3 of the ears on both sides.

#### **Eleventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

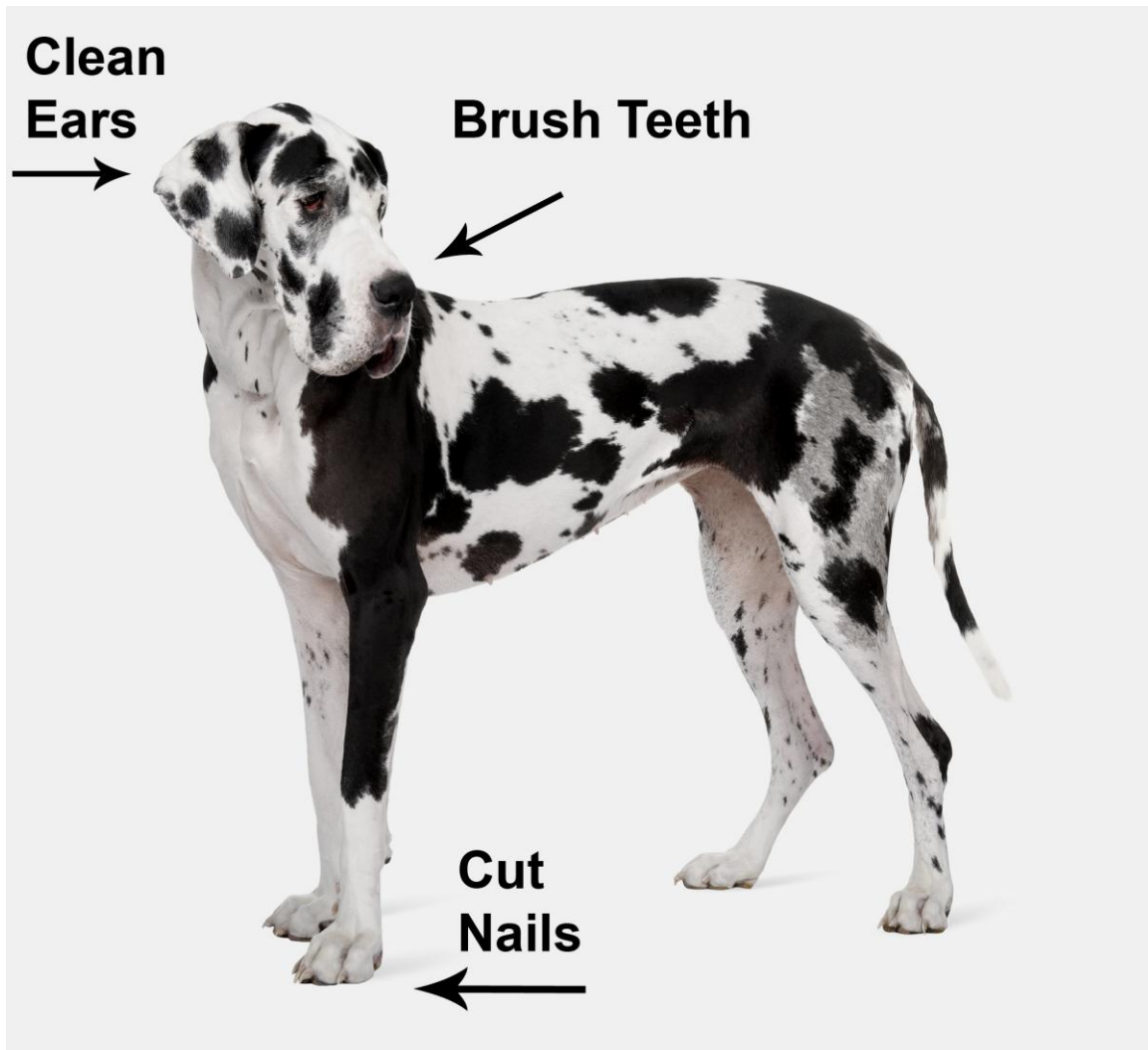
#### **Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

## **Notes**

# GREAT DANE



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, pad moisturizer, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Clean wrinkles on body. Wash any folds on face. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Use pad moisturizer on joints and pasterns to keep them supple.

**Eighth Step:**

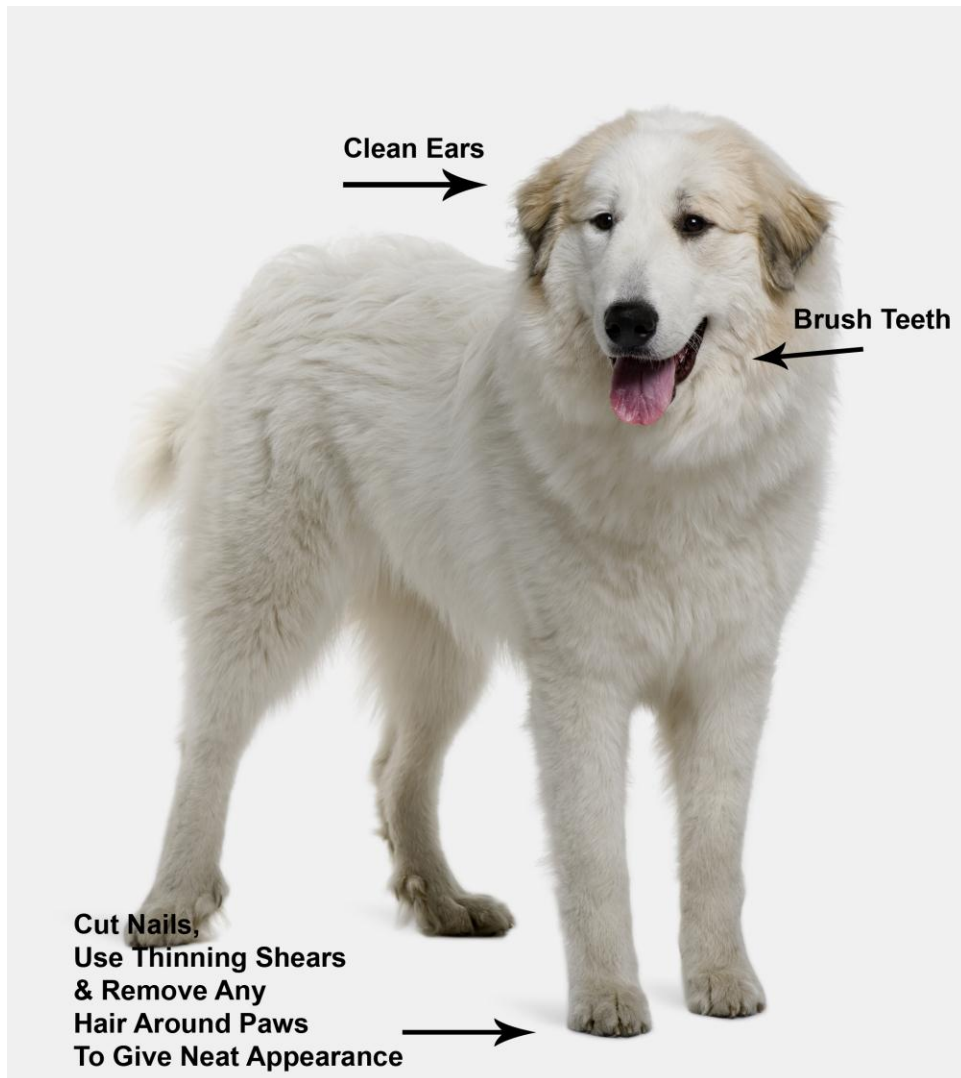
Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# GREAT PYRENEES



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush (large), Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Use thinning shears to remove straggly hair around paws.

**Ninth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks. You're Done!

# GREATER SWISS MOUNTAIN DOG



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your scissors and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle. Trim straggly hair around ears.

**Seventh Step:**

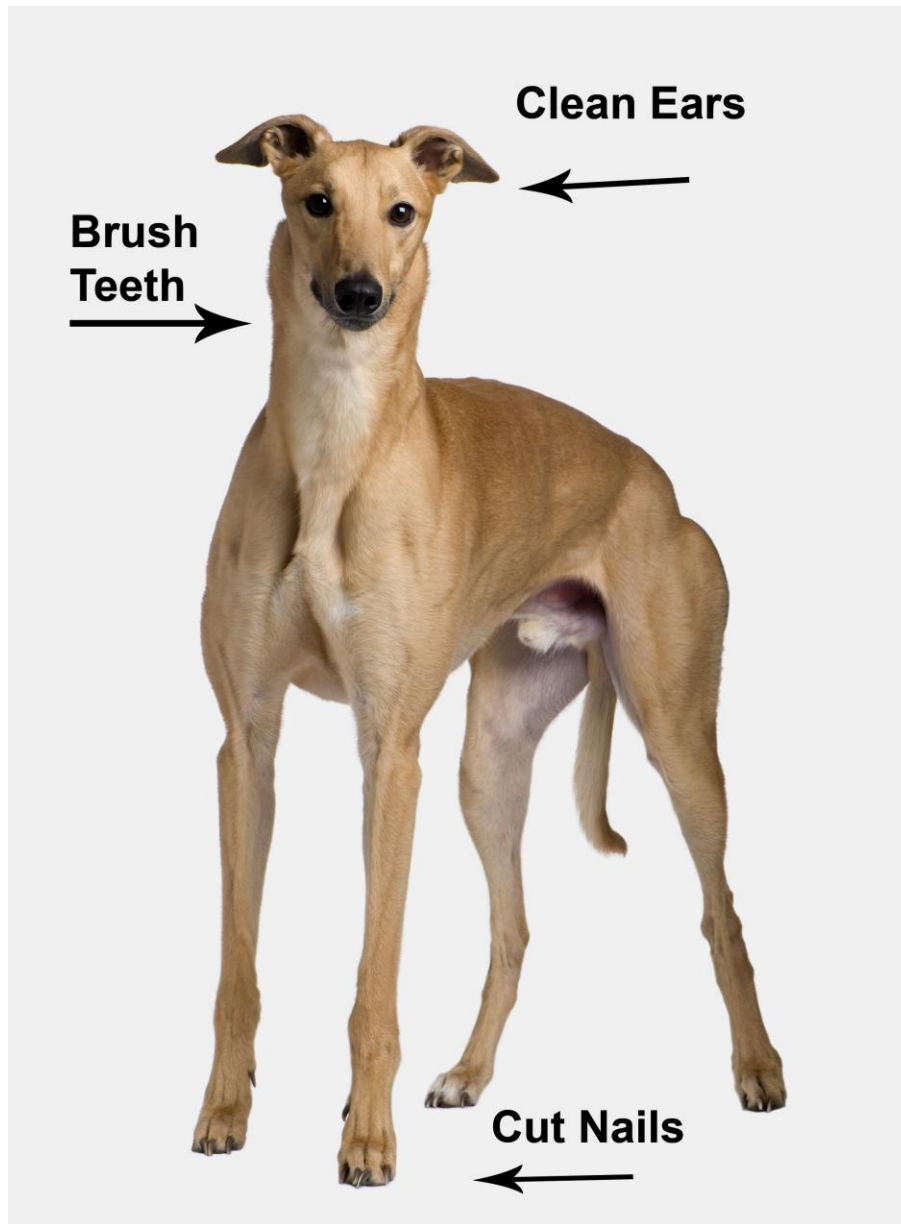
Lightly spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# GREYHOUND



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

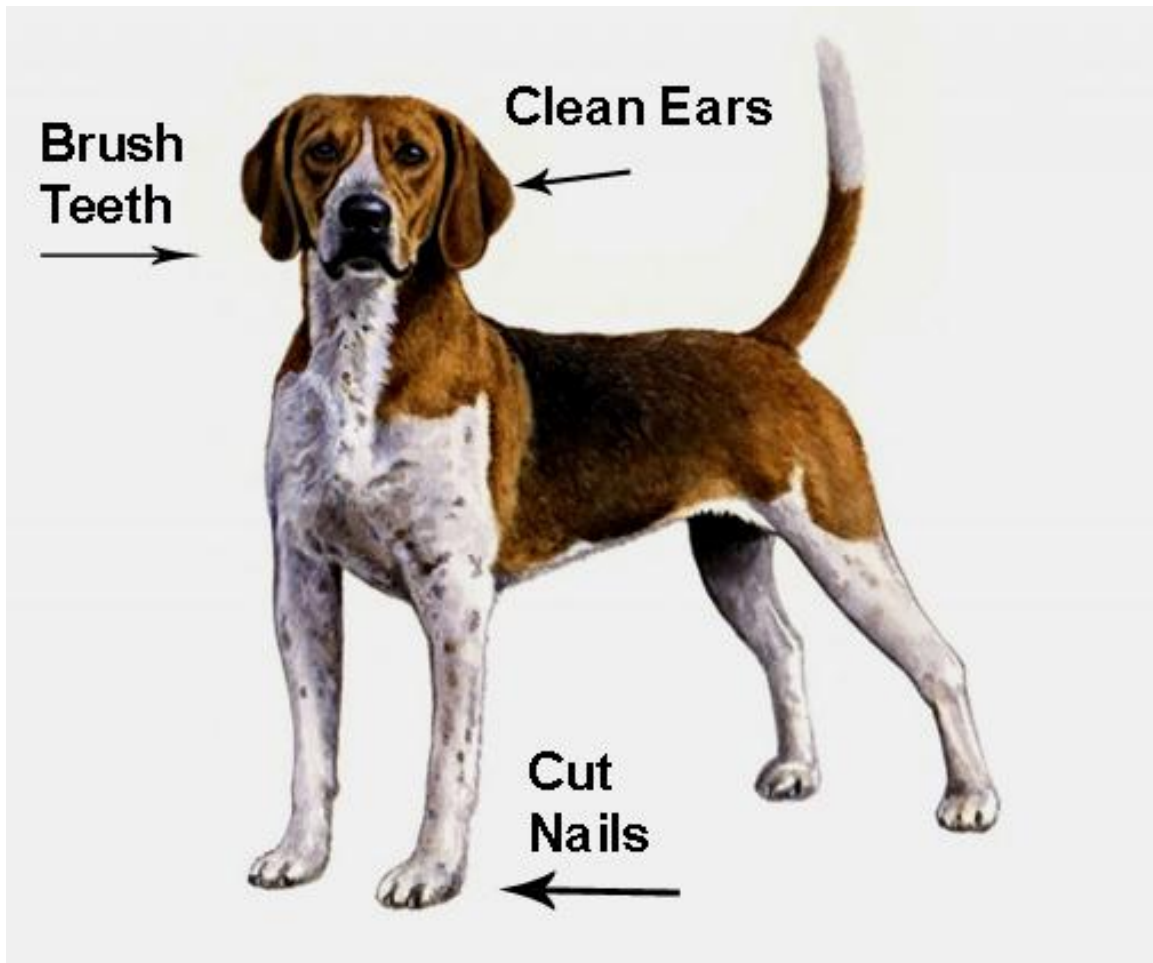
Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# HARRIER



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# HAVANESE



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:**

Part the hair on top of the head ending at the tip of the nose. Over each eye braid a small amount of hair. (optional)

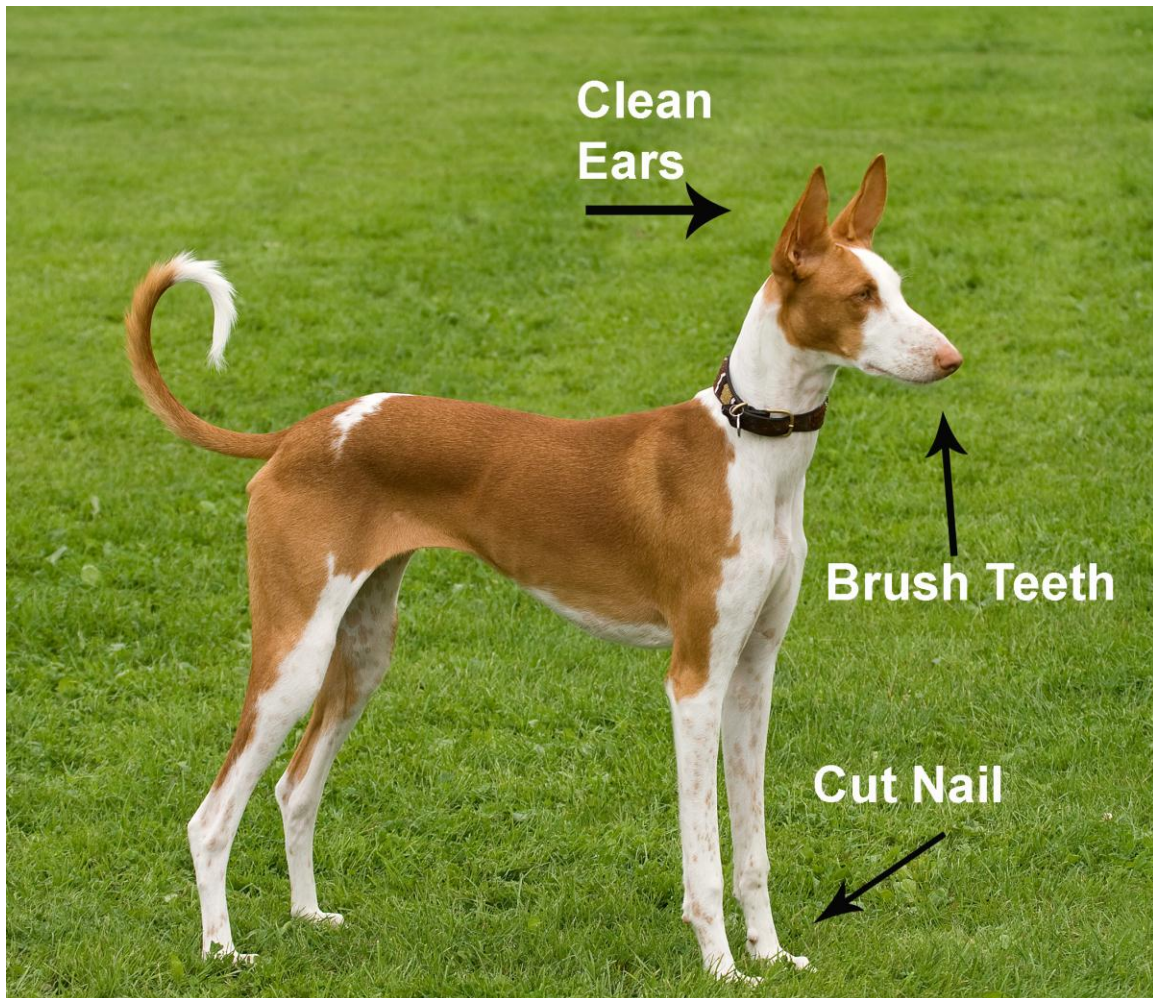
**Eleventh Step:**

Use your shears to round off feet. Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through going upwards to create fullness. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. You're done!

# IBIZAN HOUND



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:** Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!



# IRISH RED & WHITE SETTER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #7F blade, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Sixth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Seventh Step:**

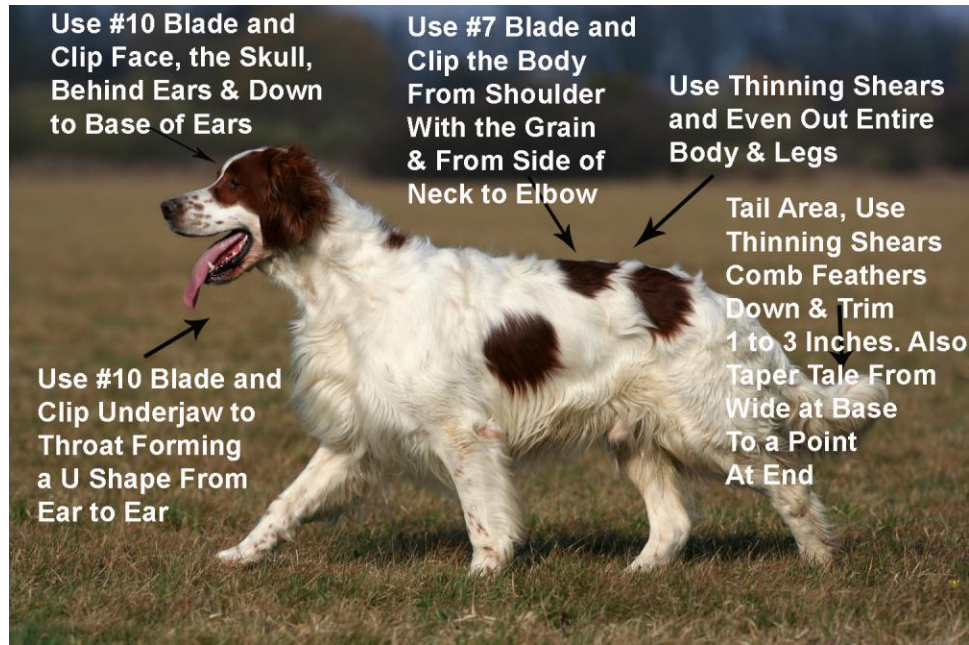
After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Eighth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Ninth Step:****BODY/LEGS/CHEST**

- 1) Use your #7F blade to trim the top of the body from the base of the skull to the lower part of the hip.
- 2) Use your #7F blade to trim and blend the rest of the body, including under the chest and sides, referring to the top of the shoulders as a baseline measurement. Follow the natural contours of the body.
- 3) Use your thinning shears to smooth out shoulder hair evenly into leg featherings.
- 4) Use your thinning shears to trim hair from the hock to the bottom of the foot.
- 5) Use your thinning shears to trim the hair between the toes level with the top of the foot.
- 6) Use your shears to round off feet.
- 7) Use your thinning shears to trim 1-3 inches off the underside of the tail. Taper to a point at the tip leaving the base of the tail wider than the tip. Trim the tail so it doesn't fall below the hock. Trim extra hair from the top of the tail.



### **Tenth Step:**

#### **FACE/EARS/THROAT**

- 1) Use your #10 blade and going with the grain, trim the top of the head to the base of the skull, and around to the lower base of the ears. Trim the face. Trim the cheeks down and out to the corners of the ears. Starting at the stop, trim up the snout against the grain. Trim the muzzle downward.
- 2) Use your #10 blade to trim the under the jaw and the throat, creating a 'U' shape going from the ears and down the sternum. Trim around the lips.
- 3) Use your #10 blade to trim the top 1/3 of the ears on both sides. Thoroughly comb out the bottom 2/3 of the ears on both sides.

### **Eleventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

### **Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks. You're done!



## **Notes**

# IRISH SETTER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #7F blade, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Sixth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Seventh Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Eighth Step:**

Comb and fluff!



### **Ninth Step:**

#### **BODY/LEGS/CHEST**

- 1) Use your #7F blade to trim the top of the body from the base of the skull to the lower part of the hip.
- 2) Use your #7F blade to trim and blend the rest of the body, including under the chest and sides, referring to the top of the shoulders as a baseline measurement. Follow the natural contours of the body.
- 3) Use your thinning shears to smooth out shoulder hair evenly into leg featherings.
- 4) Use your thinning shears to trim hair from the hock to the bottom of the foot.

- 5) Use your thinning shears to trim the hair between the toes level with the top of the foot.
- 6) Use your shears to round off feet.
- 7) Use your thinning shears to trim 1-3 inches off the underside of the tail. Taper to a point at the tip leaving the base of the tail wider than the tip. Trim the tail so it doesn't fall below the hock. Trim extra hair from the top of the tail.

**Tenth Step:**

**FACE/EARS/THROAT**

- 1) Use your #10 blade and going with the grain, trim the top of the head to the base of the skull, and around to the lower base of the ears. Trim the face. Trim the cheeks down and out to the corners of the ears. Starting at the stop, trim up the snout against the grain. Trim the muzzle downward.
- 2) Use your #10 blade to trim the under the jaw and the throat, creating a 'U' shape going from the ears and down the sternum. Trim around the lips.
- 3) Use your #10 blade to trim the top 1/3 of the ears on both sides. Thoroughly comb out the bottom 2/3 of the ears on both sides.

**Eleventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer**

**Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School

1-888-Wag-MyTail

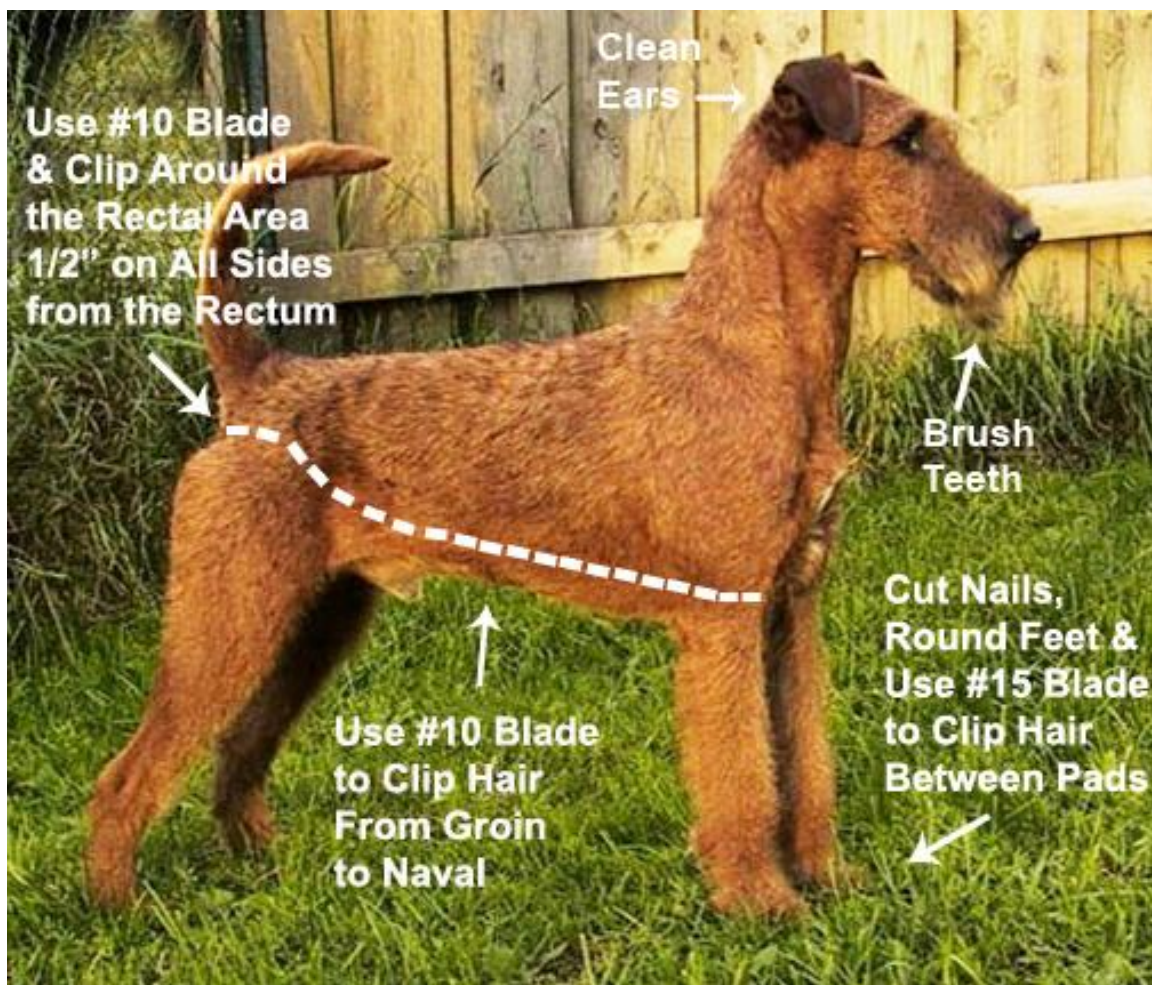
**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

# IRISH TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Brush (soft)  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper  
#5F blade, #7F or 8 1/2 blade, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your comb and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

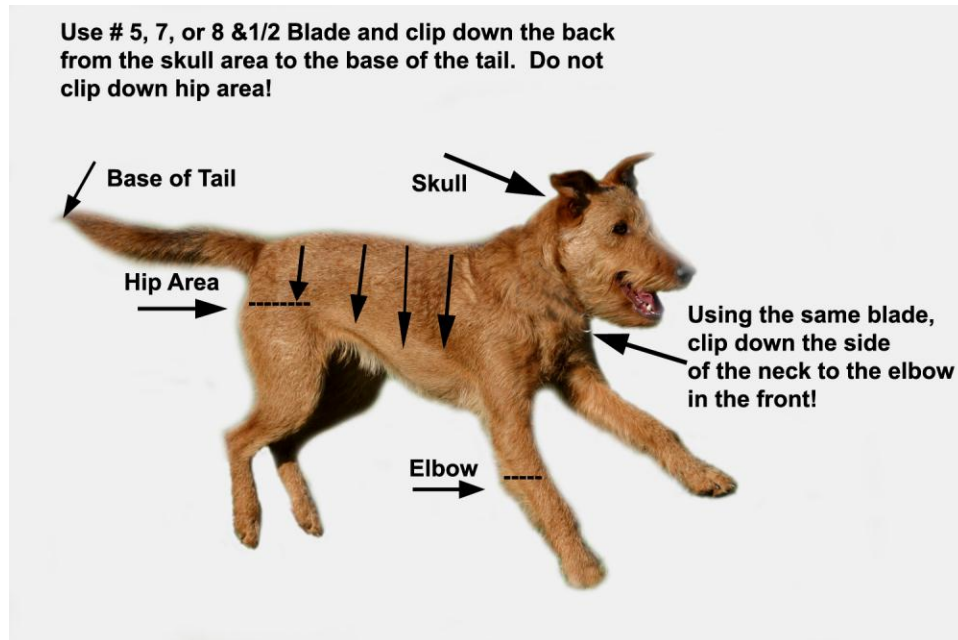
**Tenth Step: BODY**

Use either your #5F, #7F or #8 ½ blade and follow the natural direction of the hair growth. Using the breastbone as your guide, clip in this order:

- 1) Base of skull down to back of the base of the tail.
- 2) Clip the entire tail.
- 3) Down the sides of the neck to the shoulder and ending at the elbow in front.



- 4) Down the sides of the body past the flank at rear and ending at the hip on the hind legs.
- 5) Down the chest and shoulders to the front arm and the elbow at the side.





**Eleventh Step: FACE**

Use your #10 blade.

- 1) Comb hair forward around eyes. Clip from the upper part of the eye socket to the base of the skull.
- 2) Clip from the outside part of the eye to the base of the ear.
- 3) Clip cheek starting at outside corner of the eye.

**Twelfth Step: EARS**

Use your #10 blade.

- 1) Clip both sides of the ears starting at base of ears.
- 2) Use shears to even out edges of ears.

**Thirteenth Step: EYEBROWS**

Use your thinning shears/comb.

- 1) Comb eyebrows forward and create a V shape with thinning shears by removing extra hair.
- 2) Diagonally trim eyebrows from the outside to the center. A triangular shape is desired.

**Fourteenth Step: MUZZLE/BEARD**

Use your thinning shears.

- 1) Trim extra hair from top of muzzle.
- 2) Comb beard forward and thin from corner of mouth to corner of eyebrow. Line should appear straight.
- 3) Shape beard into a barrel shape. Thin if necessary.

**Fifteenth Step: UNDERCHEST/FORECHEST/LEGS**

Use your shears/thinning shears.

- 1) With shears trim underchest hair from elbow pointing toward flank and following body lines.
- 2) Use your shears to shape the front legs. They should be straight with the legs full and rounded.
- 3) Use thinning shears to shape rear legs. The hip and leg should be smoothly blended.
- 4) Use your thinning shears to smooth out forechest.
- 5) Use your shears to round off feet.

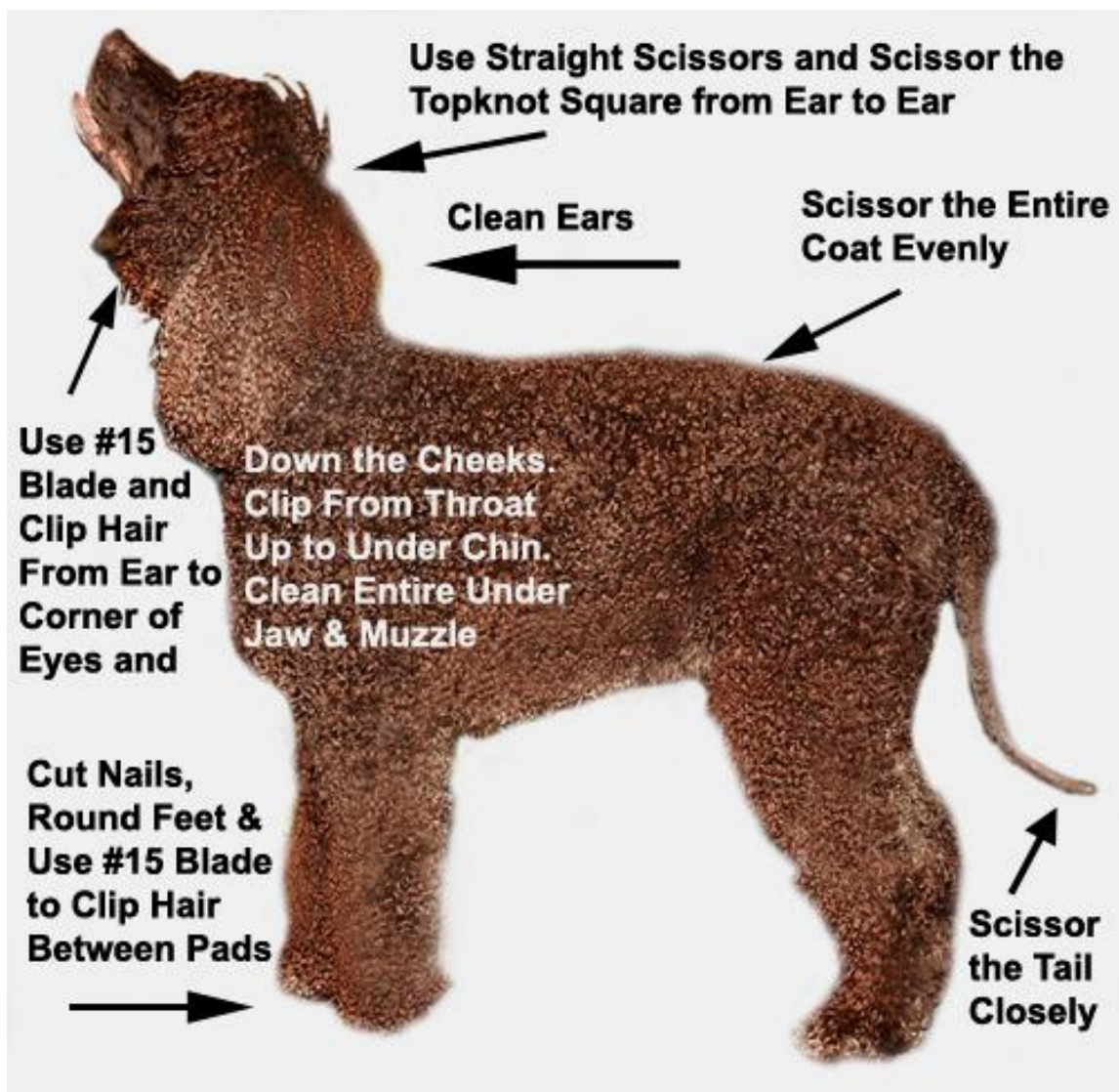
**Sixteenth Step:**

Hand rub conditioner into coat. You may also want to spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks. You're done!

# IRISH WATER SPANIEL



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fifth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Sixth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Seventh Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Eighth Step:**

Use your shears to even out any unruly hair on the coat.

**Ninth Step:**

Use your #15 or #40 blade to trim the area from the ear to the corner of the eye and down the cheeks on the face. Trim the underjaw and muzzle, the throat and under the chin.

**Tenth Step:** Use your shears to trim the tail closely and evenly. It should be short.

**Eleventh Step:**

Use your shears to trim the topknot from ear to ear in front.

**Twelfth Step:**

Use your shears to round off feet.

**Thirteenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School

1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

# IRISH WOLFHOUND



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fifth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Sixth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Seventh Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Eighth Step:****BODY/NECK/LEGS/TAIL/FEET**

- 1) Use your thinning shears to trim any straggly hair from the body, neck and throat areas.
- 2) Use your shears to even out leg featherings.
- 3) Use your shears to round off feet.
- 4) Use your shears to even out tail featherings.

**Ninth Step:****HEAD/FACE/BEARD**

- 1) Use your thinning shears to trim any straggly hair from the top of the head.
- 2) Use your thinning shears to thin the hair on the cheeks.
- 3) Use your thinning shears to trim any straggly hair around ears.
- 4) Use your shears to square off the beard and whiskers, leaving them full.

**Tenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne. You're done!



# ITALIAN GREYHOUND



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.



**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

## JACK RUSSELL (Smooth)



### Tools Needed

Rubber Brush

Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to trim rough hair so it looks smooth on the body.

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

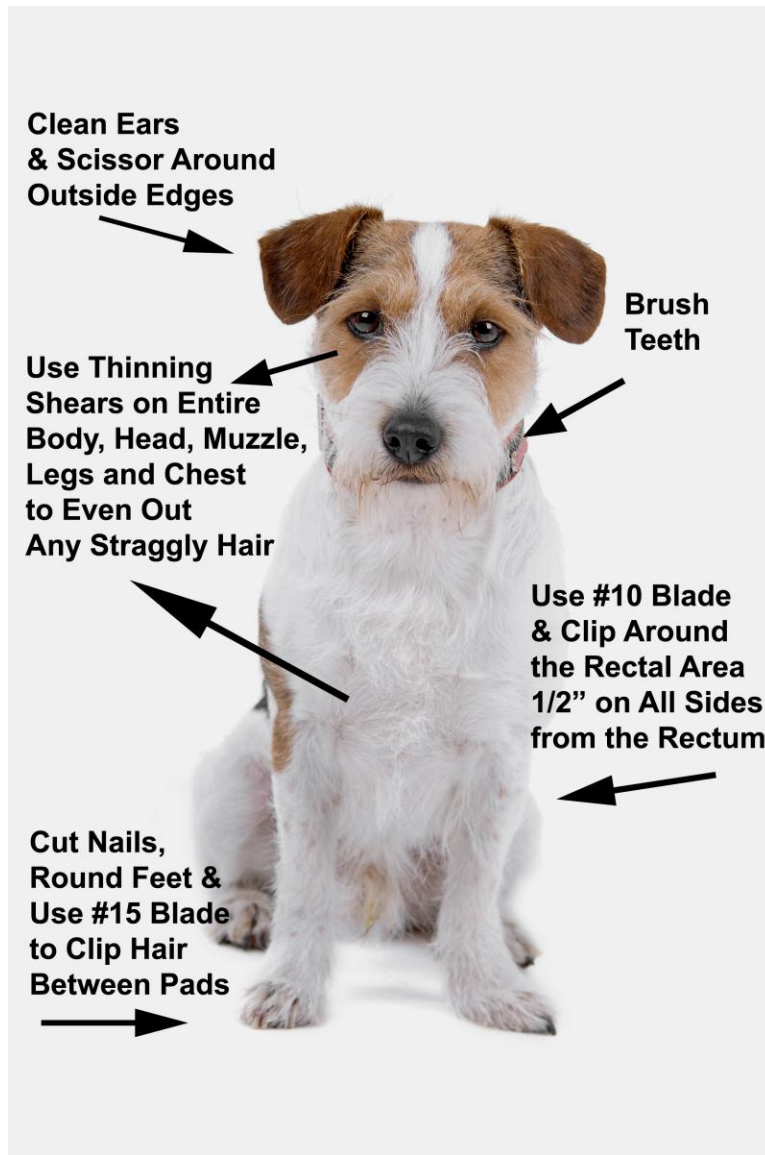
Spray coat with conditioner. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# JACK RUSSELL (Wire Hair)



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #10 Blade, #15 or #40 Blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade) on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads. Use thinning shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Sixth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Seventh Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to trim the forehead and to smooth any rough hair on the legs and the rest of the body. Trim any extra hair from the face, under the chin and on top of the muzzle.

**Ninth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle. Trim outside edges of the ears to neaten them. Round off feet.

**Tenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb conditioner through coat. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School

1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

# JAPANESE CHIN



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade) on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Sixth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Wash any folds on face. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Seventh Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Eighth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Ninth Step:**

Use your thinning shears and clean up any straggly hair on the legs and feet.

**Tenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne. Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. You're done!

# KEESHOND



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Dematting Comb or Rake, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 Blade and #15 or #40 Blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade) on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads. Use thinning shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Sixth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris **Option:** De-shed Treatment.

**Seventh Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Eighth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Ninth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle. Clean up outside edges of ears and feet.

**Tenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush and/or comb to fluff hair out from body. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne. You're done!

# KERRY BLUE TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #5F or #7blade, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:****BODY/LEGS/TAIL**

Use your #5F or #7F blade.

- 1) Trim the body starting at the base of the skull and go down the back ending at the base of the tail.
- 2) Trim the tail to a blunt tip with a wider base.
- 3) Trim the sides of the neck to halfway between the top of the shoulder and elbow.

- 4) Trim the sides of the back to the flank at the rear and to the hips at the rear legs.
- 5) Create a shallow incline line from the elbow to the hip.
- 6) Use your #10 blade to create a 'V' shape on the neck, starting about 2 in. below the throat and going diagonally into your 'V'.
- 7) Use your shears to trim the chest so it blends in smoothly from the neck, by increasing the hair length as you go downward.
- 8) Use your shears to trim the front legs into a tubular shape. Leave the front legs fuller and more rounded than the rear legs.
- 9) Use your shears to trim the rear legs going with the contours of the legs and showing the bend in the stifle.
- 10) Use your shears to make sure the entire body, legs and tail are blended smoothly together.
- 11) Use your shears to round off feet.

### **Eleventh Step:**

#### **FACE/EARS**

- 1) Use your #10 blade to trim the ears, going around the outside edges of the ears at the base. Make sure there is a clean line between the ears and the sides of the head.
- 2) Use your #10 blade and trim the ears cleanly on both sides.
- 3) Use your shears to neaten up the outside edges of the ears.
- 4) Use your shears to trim the eyebrows. Comb forward and then start trimming at the outside corner, going to the center. Leave the fall full and blend it into the hair on the face.
- 5) Use your shears to remove any extra hair from the beard, creating a long look. Beard is left full, not bushy.



**Twelfth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

# KOMONDOR



## Tools Needed

Scrubbing Brush, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.



**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Make sure you wash cords completely, using a scrubbing brush. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Seventh Step:**

Put dog in kennel on towels and dry with a forced air dryer.

**Do Not Brush After Drying!**

**Eighth Step:**

If needed, separate cording by hand all the way down to the skin.

**Ninth Step:**

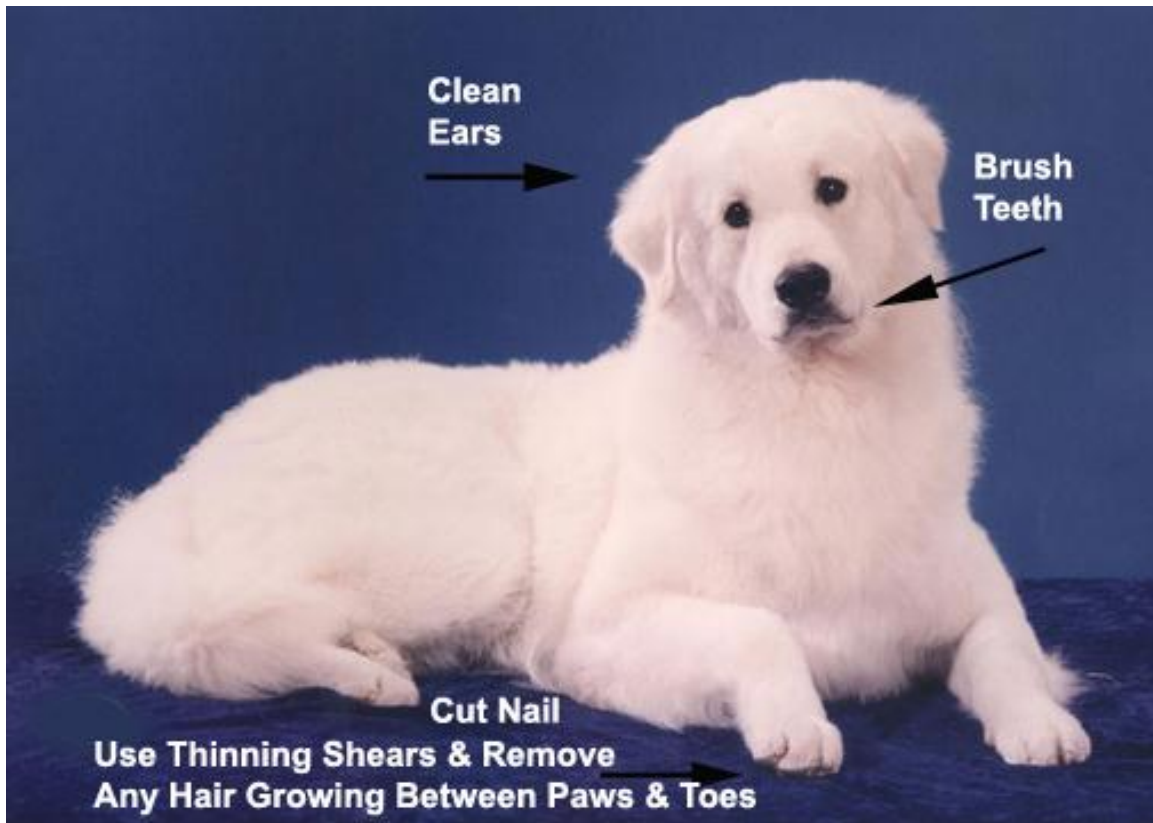
Use your shears to trim any cords that touch the ground when standing. For ease, trim all the cords to a single measurement ie. 4" or 5".

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# KUVASZ



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

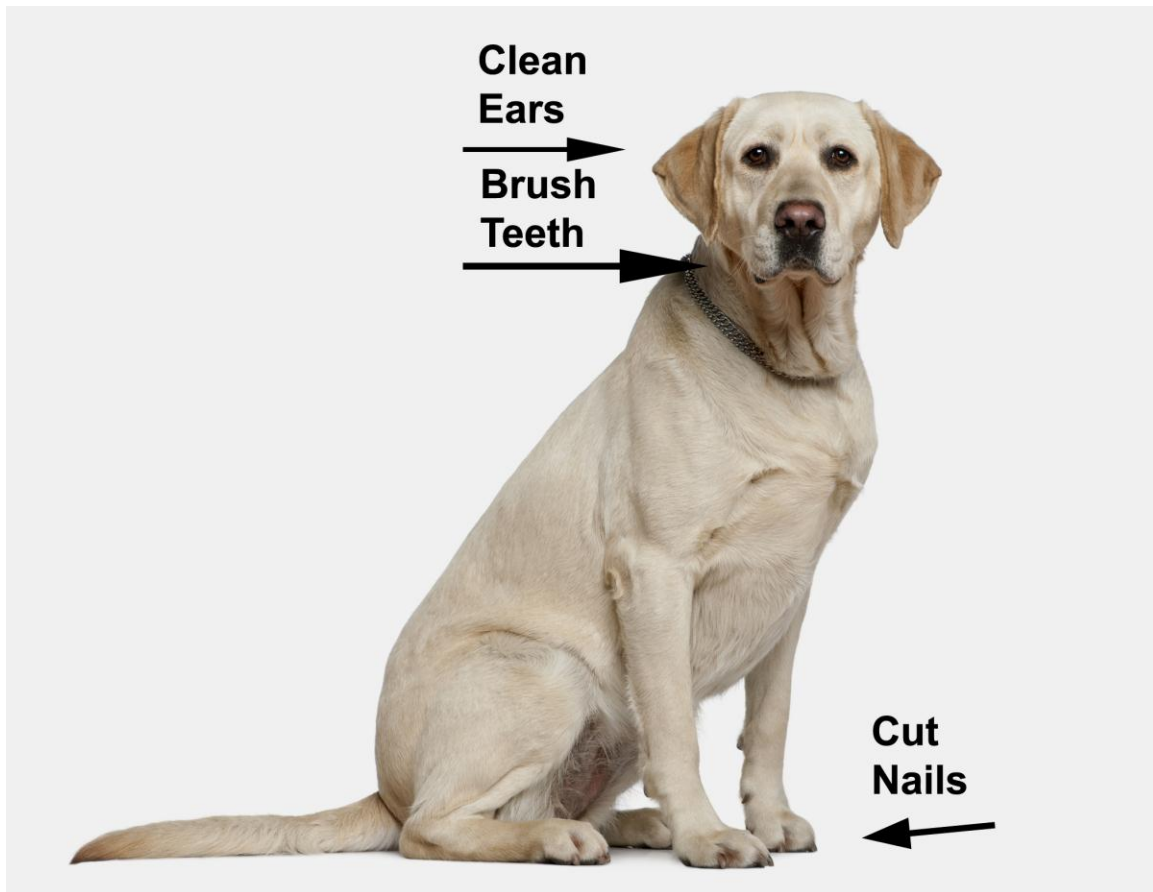
Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# LABRADOR RETRIEVER



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush, Shedding Blade, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. Use your shedding blade to remove dead hair.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

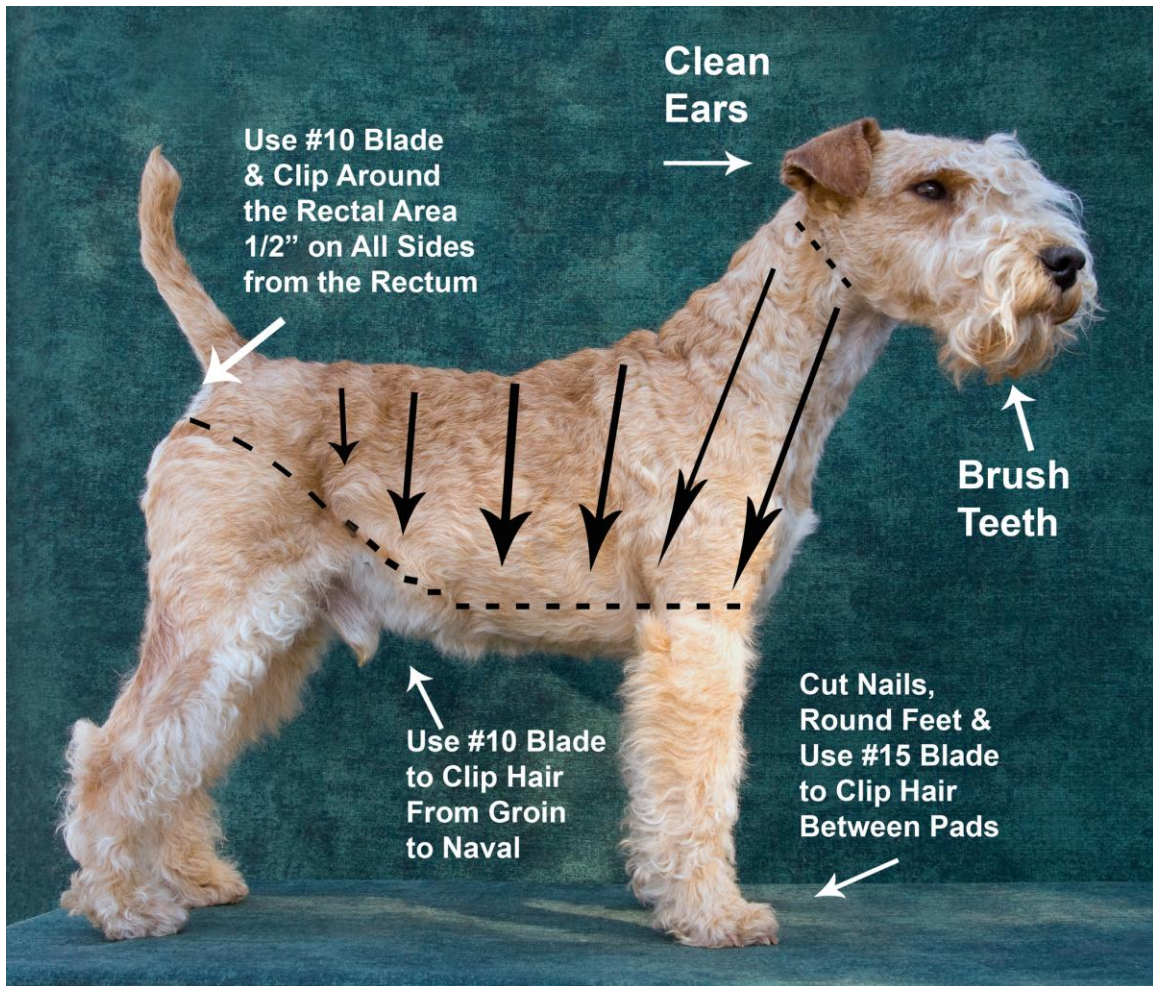
Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# LAKELAND TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #5F, #7F or 8 1/2 blade, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your comb and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:****BODY/LEGS/TAIL**

Use your #5F or #7F or #8 ½ blade.

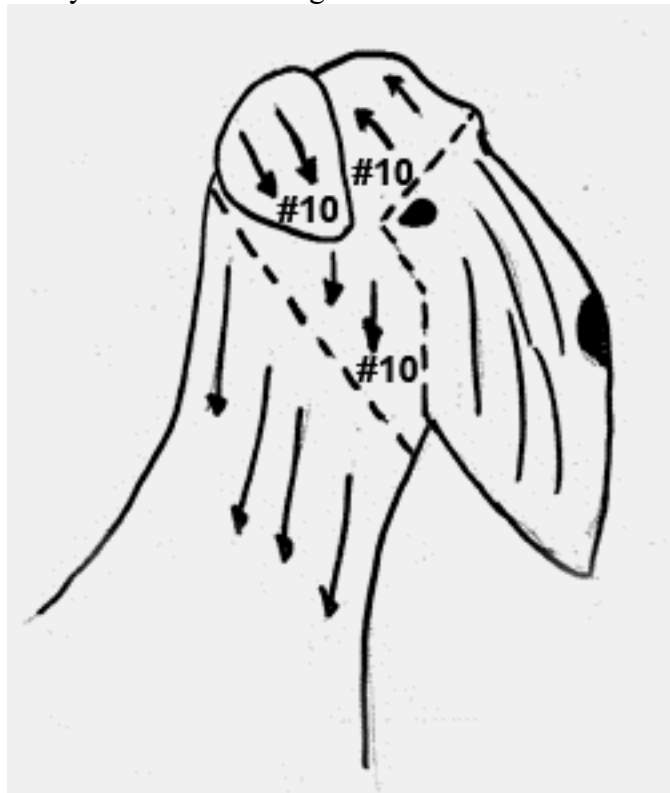
- 1) Trim the body starting at the base of the skull and go down the back ending at the base of the tail.
- 2) Trim all around the tail.
- 3) Trim the sides of the body to the flank at the rear and to the hips at the rear legs.

- 4) Trim the chest, shoulders and neck ending at the arm in front and the elbow on the sides. Use your thinning shears to smooth out and blend these areas.
- 5) Use your shears to trim the front legs into a tubular shape. Leave the front legs fuller and more rounded than the rear legs.
- 8) Use your shears to trim the rear legs going with the contours of the legs and showing the bend in the stifle.
- 9) Use your thinning shears to blend in the hair on the legs with the hips.
- 9) Use your shears to make sure the entire body, legs and tail are blended smoothly together.
- 10) Use your shears to round off feet.

### **Eleventh Step:**

#### **FACE/EARS**

- 1) Use your #10 blade to trim the face by combing the hair forward and then trimming  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. starting at the top of the eye (forehead) and going to the base of the skull. Continue trimming from the eye up to the ears and down the cheeks.
- 2) Use your #10 blade and trim the ears cleanly on both sides, going from the base outward..
- 3) Use your shears to neaten up the outside edges of the ears.
- 4) Use your shears to trim the eyebrows. Comb forward and then start trimming at the outside corner, going to the center. Leave the fall full and blend it into the hair on the face.
- 5) Use your thinning shears to remove any extra hair from the beard, creating a long look. Beard is left full, but not bushy. Thin out the line going from the corner of the mouth to the eyebrow so it's straight.





**Twelfth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

## Notes

# LEONBERGER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Use thinning shears or curved shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws.

**Eighth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# LHASA APSO



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, crème rinse, coat dressing, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the naval.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Use Crème rinse** (if desired) after rinsing. Leave it on for a few minutes then rinse the crème rinse out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff the tail combing downward.

**Tenth Step:**

Part the hair down the center, starting at the top of the head and going to the base of the tail and combing straight down. Spray with coat dressing. Part the hair from the top of the head and go down to the tip of the nose. You do not need to spray this area with coat dressing.

**Eleventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. To avoid any eye irritation for the dog, you can tie the topknot up and this is a good place for a bow. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

# LOWCHEN



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:****BACK AREA INCLUDING REAR LEGS**

Use your #15 blade to rough cut the dog's coat. Trim from the last rib to the base of the tail. Trim tail from base about half way and leave a plume at the tip. Trim the back end down to the hocks. Leave a tuft between the back legs from hocks to feet.

**Seventh Step:****FRONT AREA INCLUDING FRONT LEGS**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Eighth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Ninth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Tenth Step:**

Comb and fluff the body, mane and head. Make sure you fluff the tufts on the tail and legs. Use your shears to even up straggly hair anywhere on the body and fine tune your rough cut. It is important the clipped areas are smooth and the untrimmed areas are fluffy.

**Eleventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Twelfth Step:**

Use your shears to round off feet.

**Thirteenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner on untrimmed areas. Comb through. Hand rub conditioner on trimmed areas. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

# MALTESE



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, whitening shampoo, crème rinse, conditioner, small rubber bands, coat dressing spray cologne, ribbons

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff. Comb chest area with the grain going downwards. Completely comb out the tail up and over the back.

**Tenth Step:**

Use your shears to round off feet.

**Eleventh Step:**

Part the hair down the center, starting at the top of the head and going to the base of the tail and combing straight down. Spray with coat dressing. Part the hair from the top of the head and go down to the tip of the nose. You do not need to spray this area with coat dressing.

**Twelfth Step:**

Evenly divide the hair on the top of the head from the corner of the eye to the ear. The line from the ears should mirror each other. Wrap a small rubber band around each of the two topknots, fold the top portion down and secure with another wrap of the rubber band. You will be able to wrap the rubber band about four times total. Check the bands are not too tight. Attach bows on each topknot.

**Thirteenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!  
Also, watch the Maltese streaming video.**

## **Notes**

## MANCHESTER TERRIER



### Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana



**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

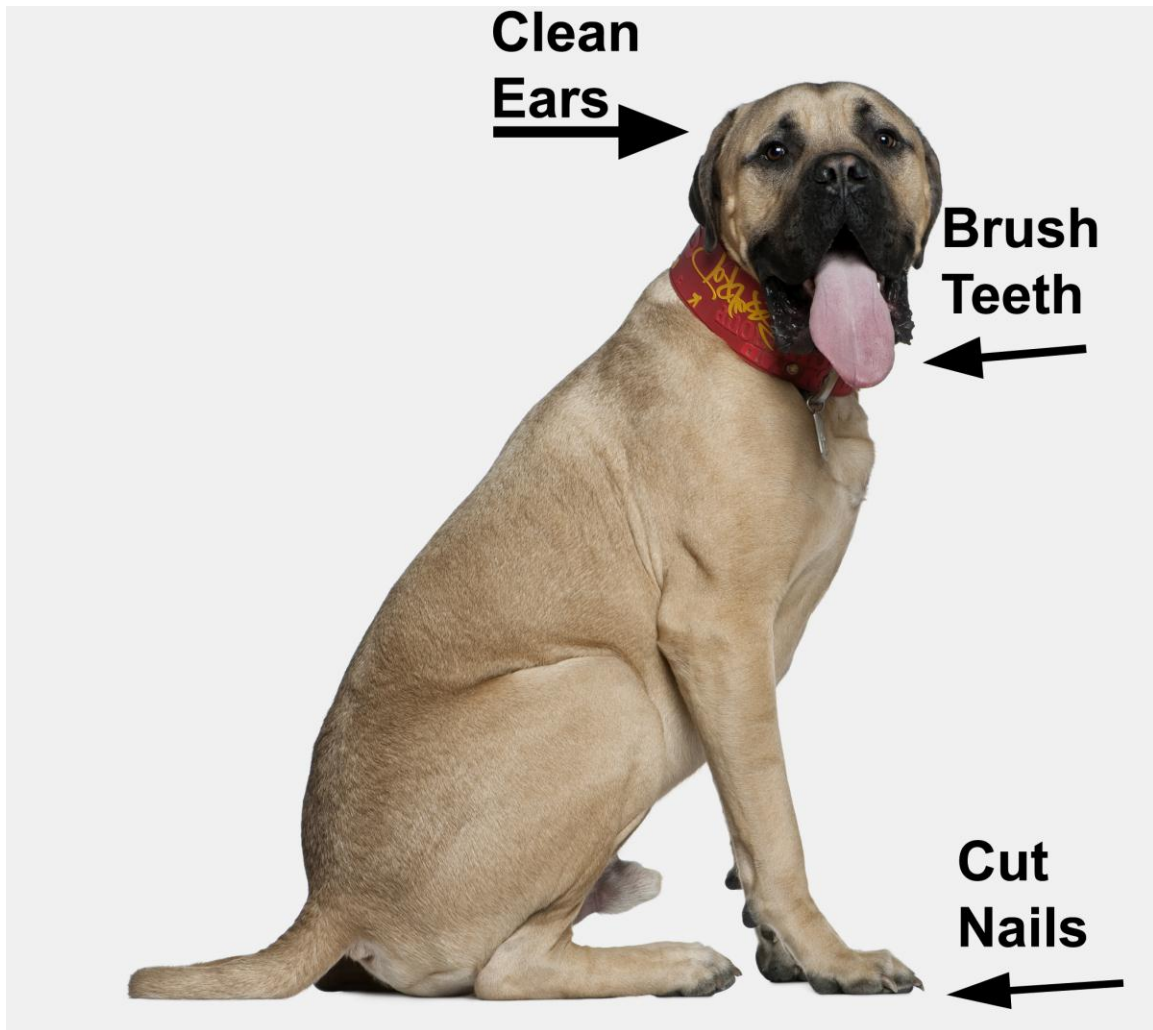
Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage quickly to create sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# MASTIFF



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, pad moisturizer, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Apply baby powder to keep wrinkles dry.

**Eighth Step:**

Use pad moisturizer on joints and pasterns to keep them supple.

**Ninth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

## MINIATURE PINSCHER



### Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage quickly to create sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# NEWFOUNDLAND



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to trim edges of paws.

**Ninth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!



# NORFOLK TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears, Stripping Knife  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana



**First Step:**

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Sixth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Seventh Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to even out hair on the shoulders and the rest of the body except the chest. The tail is trimmed closely at the tip, wider at the base.

**Ninth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim hair on both sides of the ears. Use your shears to trim the outside edges of the ears.

**Tenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

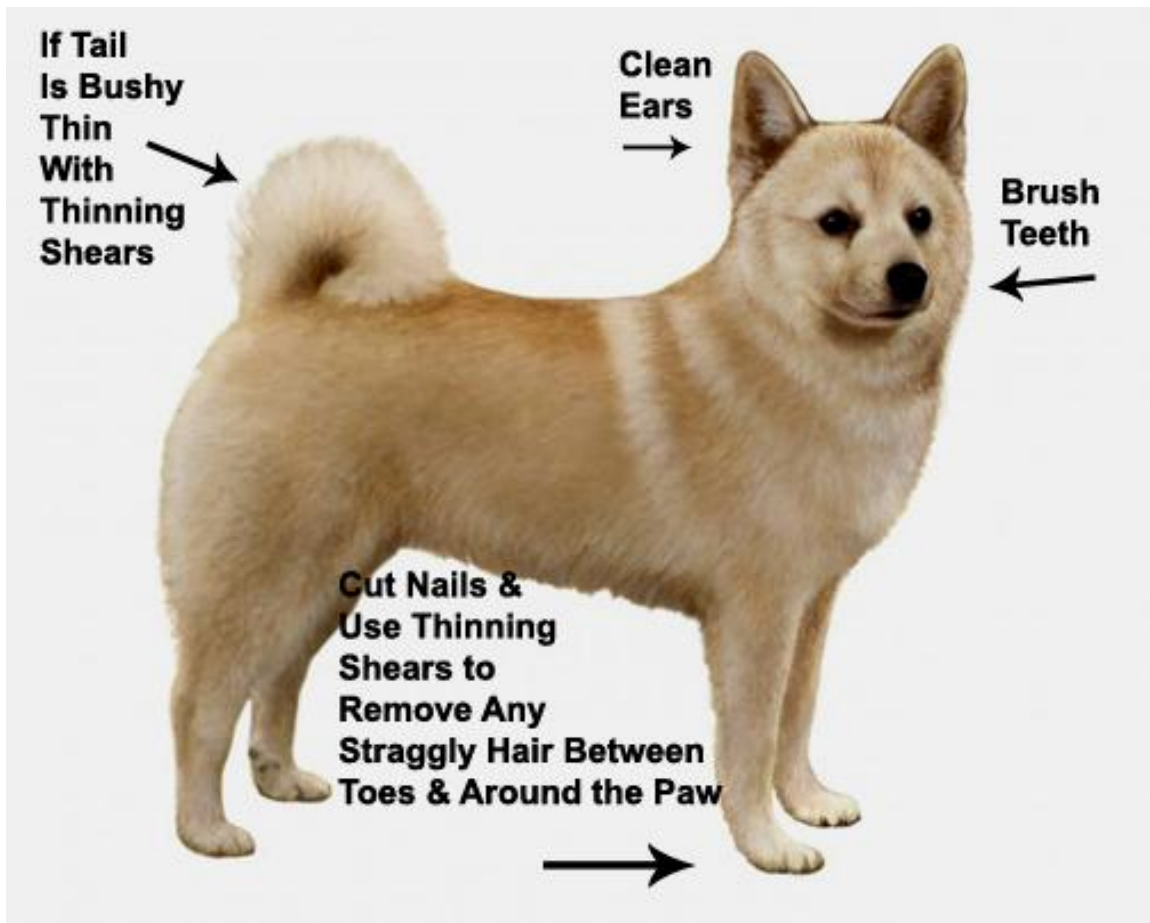
<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

# NORWEGIAN BUHUND



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes, around the edges of the ears and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Use thinning shears or curved shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws. Use your shears to thin the fullness on the tail.

**Ninth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# NORWEGIAN ELKHOUND



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes, around the edges of the ears and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Use thinning shears or curved shears to remove any straggly hair between and around paws. Use your shears to thin the fullness on the tail.

**Ninth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. You're done!

# NORWICH TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Bristle Brush (stiff), Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears, Stripping Knife  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your bristle brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Sixth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Seventh Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to even out hair on the shoulders and the rest of the body except the chest. The tail is trimmed closely at the tip, wider at the base.

**Ninth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim hair on both sides of the ears. Use your shears to trim the outside edges of the ears. Round off the outside edges of the feet.

**Tenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. You're done!

# NOVA SCOTIA DUCK TOLLING RETRIEVER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to trim hair behind the ears.

**Ninth Step:**

Use your shears to even out leg fringe and to taper the tail to a point at the end. Round off the outside edges of the feet.

**Tenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne. You're done!

# OLD ENGLISH SHEEPDOG



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Soft Brush, Pin Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, cream rinse, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:**

Round off the outside edges of the feet.

**Eleventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through with your soft brush and then use your pin brush to increase fluffiness (except on legs and sides). You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

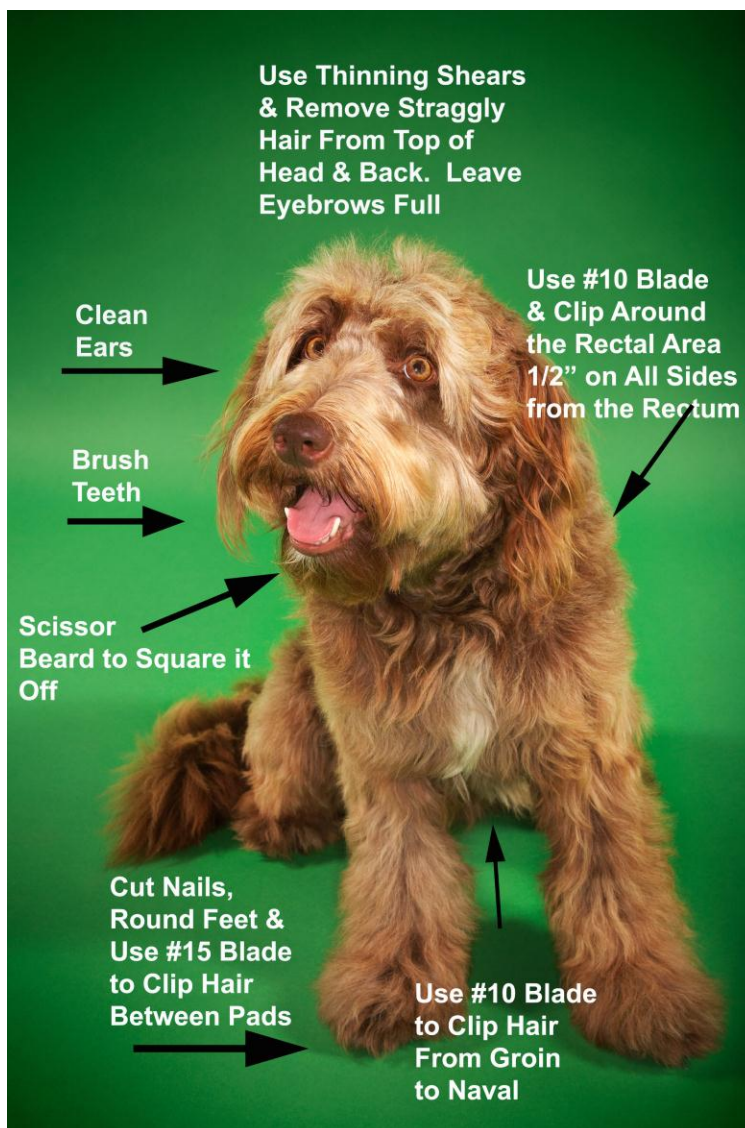
<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

# OTTERHOUND



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana



**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff. Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Tenth Step:**

With your thinning shears trim any straggly hair from the back and from the top of the head. Eyebrows should be quite full.

**Eleventh Step:**

Use your shears to trim the beard so it looks squared off. Trim the fringe on the outside edges of the ears. Round off the feet.

**Twelfth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

# PAPILLON



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fifth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Sixth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Seventh Step:**

Comb and fluff. Pay attention to the featherings on the tail, legs, chest, and ears.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle. Even the fringe on the ears keeping it long. Trim the fringe on the tail. Even off the outside edges of the feet.

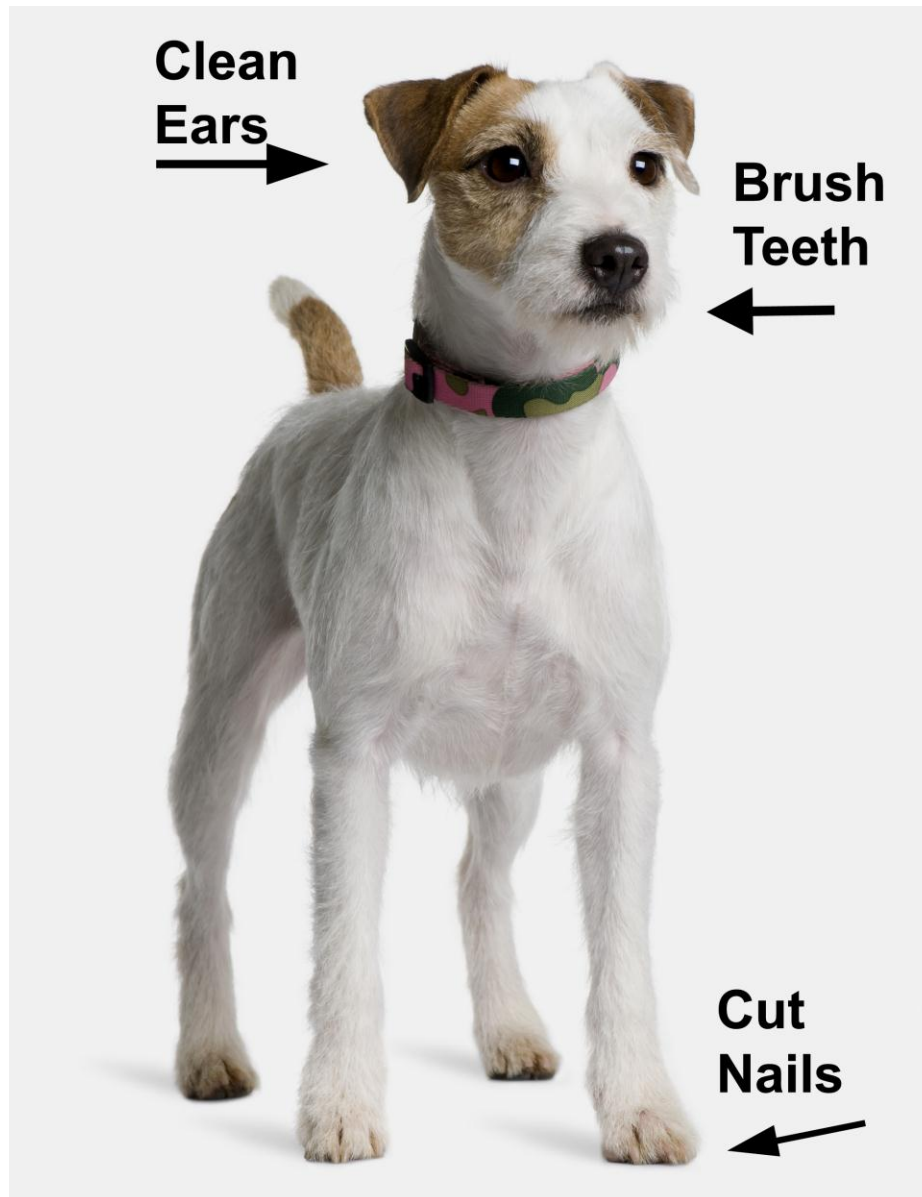
**Ninth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks. You're done.

## Parson Russell Terrier



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush

Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to trim rough hair so it looks smooth on the body.

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle. Trim any straggly hair over the ears. Round off the outsides of the feet.

**Eighth Step:**

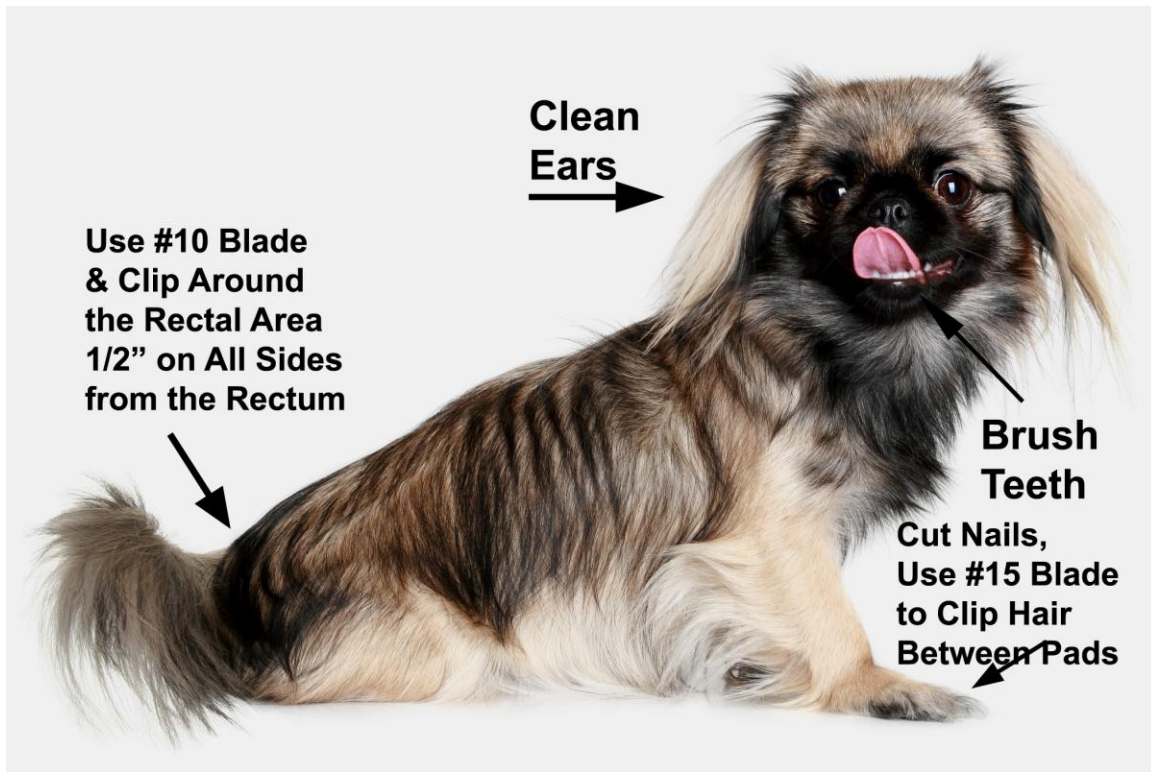
Spray coat with conditioner. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# PEKINGESE



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake, Pin Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, coat dressing, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding



**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Sixth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

Clean wrinkles on body

Wash any folds on face

**Seventh Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry. Use baby powder in wrinkles to keep them dry.

**Eighth Step:**

Brush and fluff.

**Ninth Step:**

Create a part in the center of the tail and let it fall on both sides of the body.

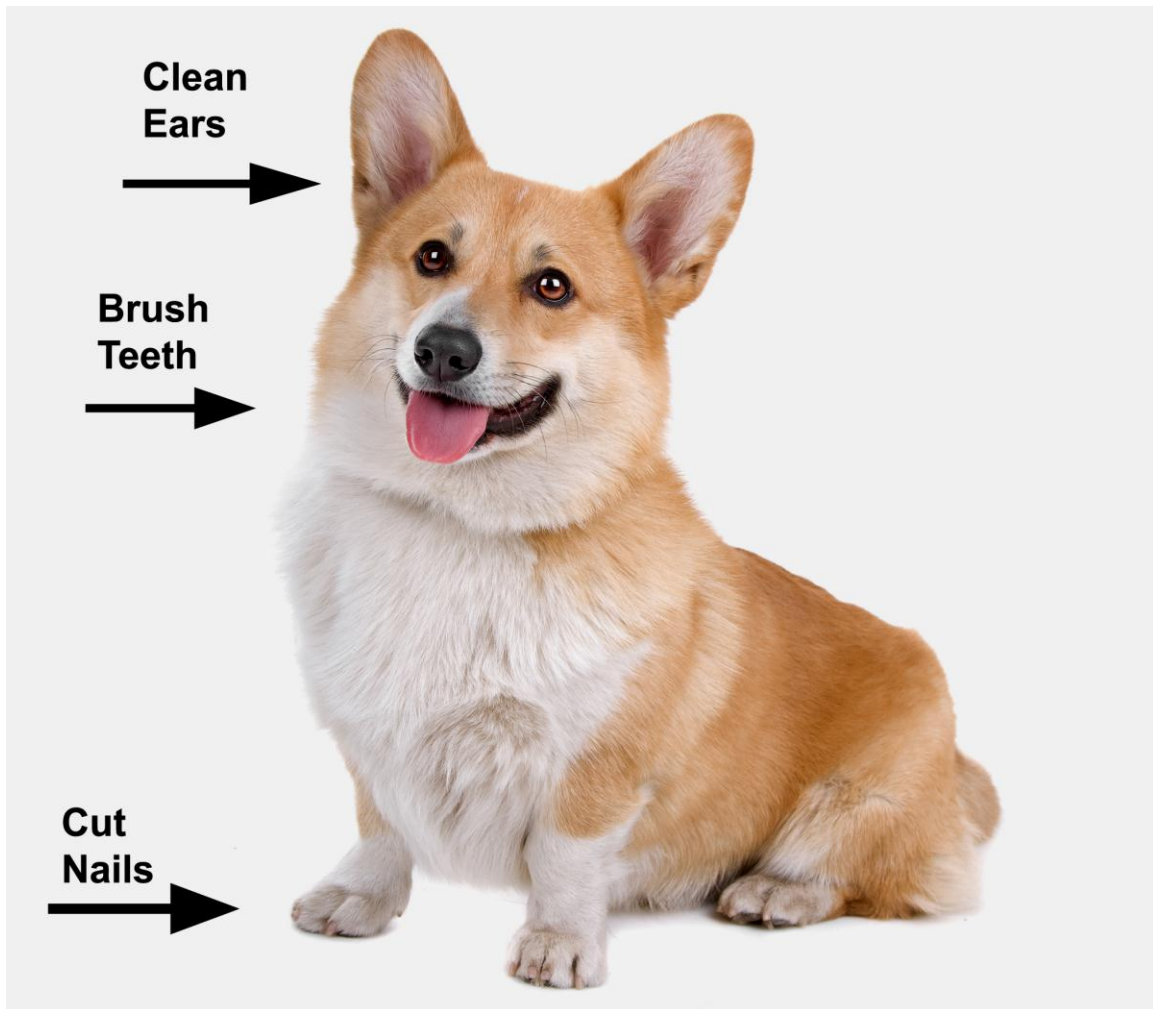
**Tenth Step:**

Use a coat dressing. Use your pin brush to fluff up. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks. You're done!

# PEMBROKE WELSH CORGI



## Tools Needed

Bristle Brush (med stiff), Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your bristle brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

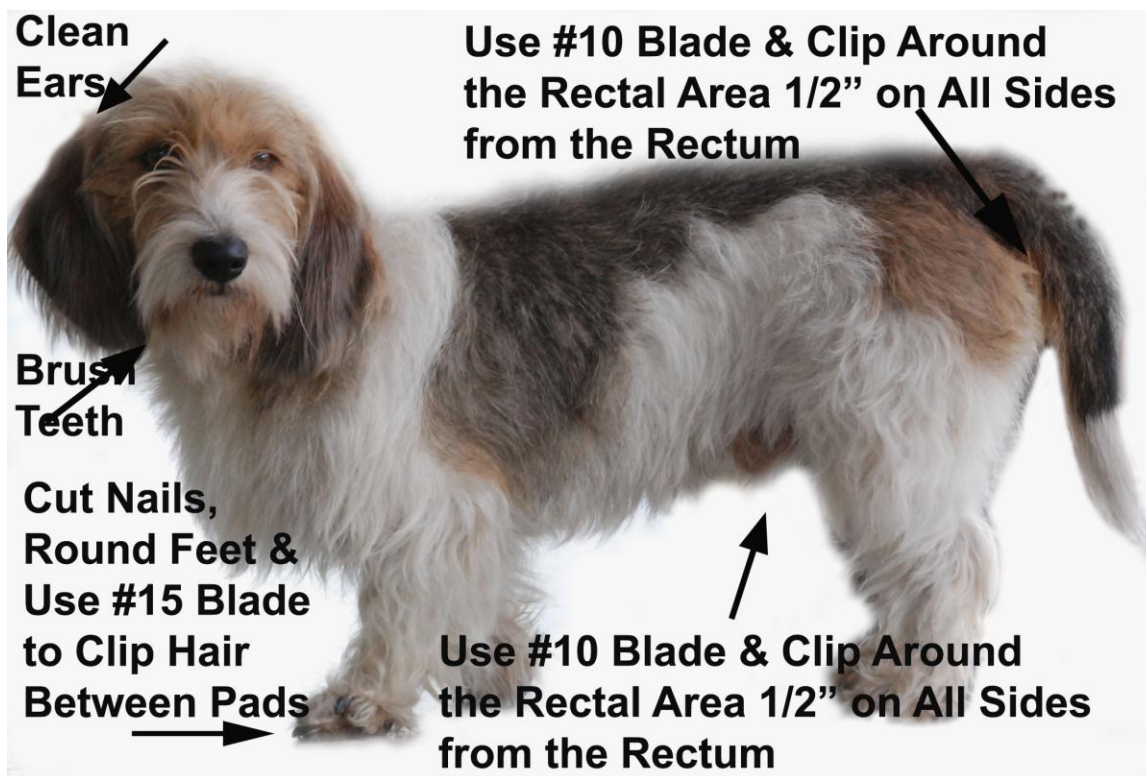
Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

## PETIT BASSET GRIFFON VENDEEN



### Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

#### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

#### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

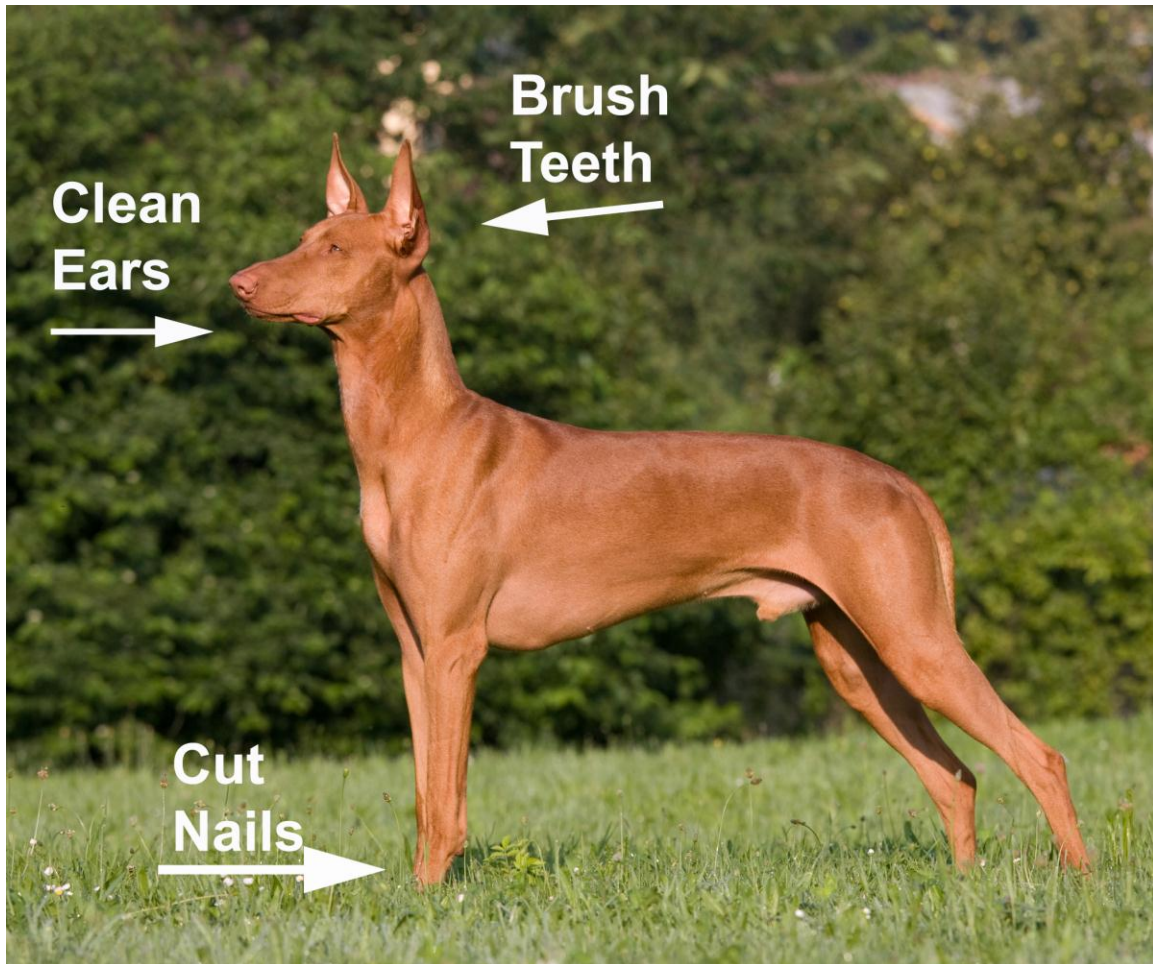
**Eleventh Step:**

Use your thinning shears to trim hair around the ears.

**Twelfth Step & Final:**

Use your shears to even out leg fringe and to taper the tail to a point at the end. Round off the outside edges of the feet. You may want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

# PHARAOH HOUND



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!



# PLOTTHOUND



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

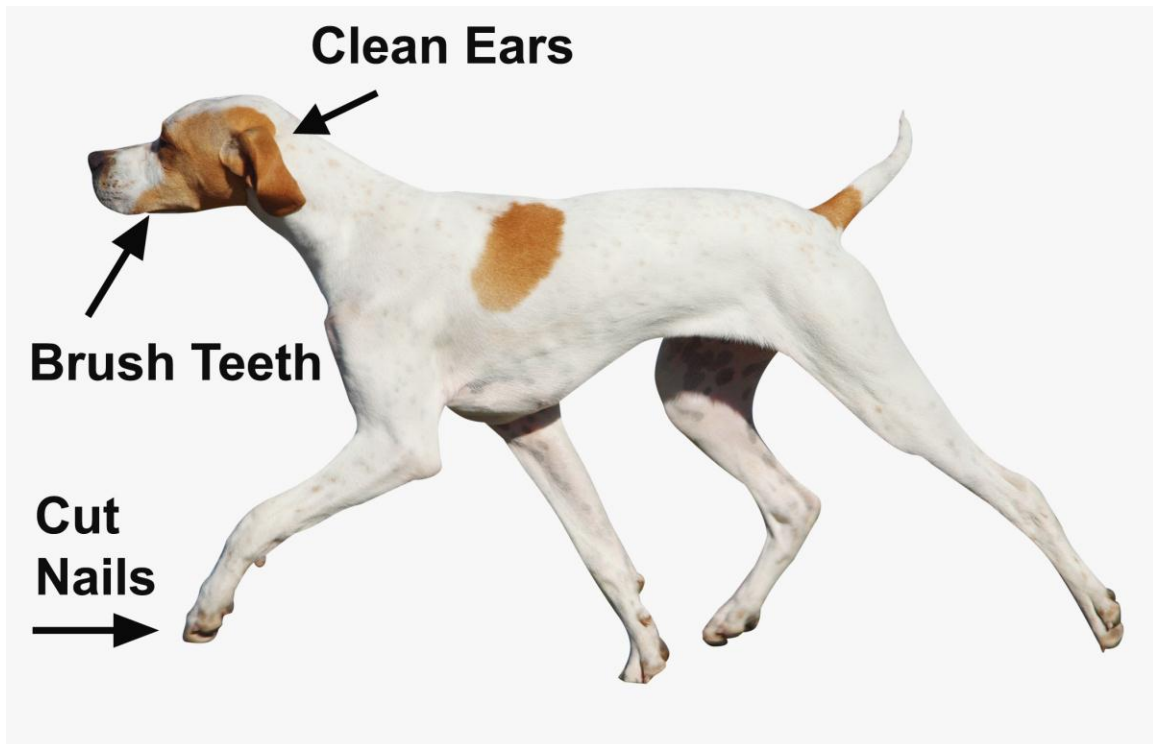
Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# POINTER



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### **Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

### **Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

# POLISH LOWLAND SHEEPDOG



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Soft Brush, Pin Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, cream rinse, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:**

Use your shears to round off feet.

**Eleventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Use your soft brush to brush through. Use your pin brush last to fluff up coat. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

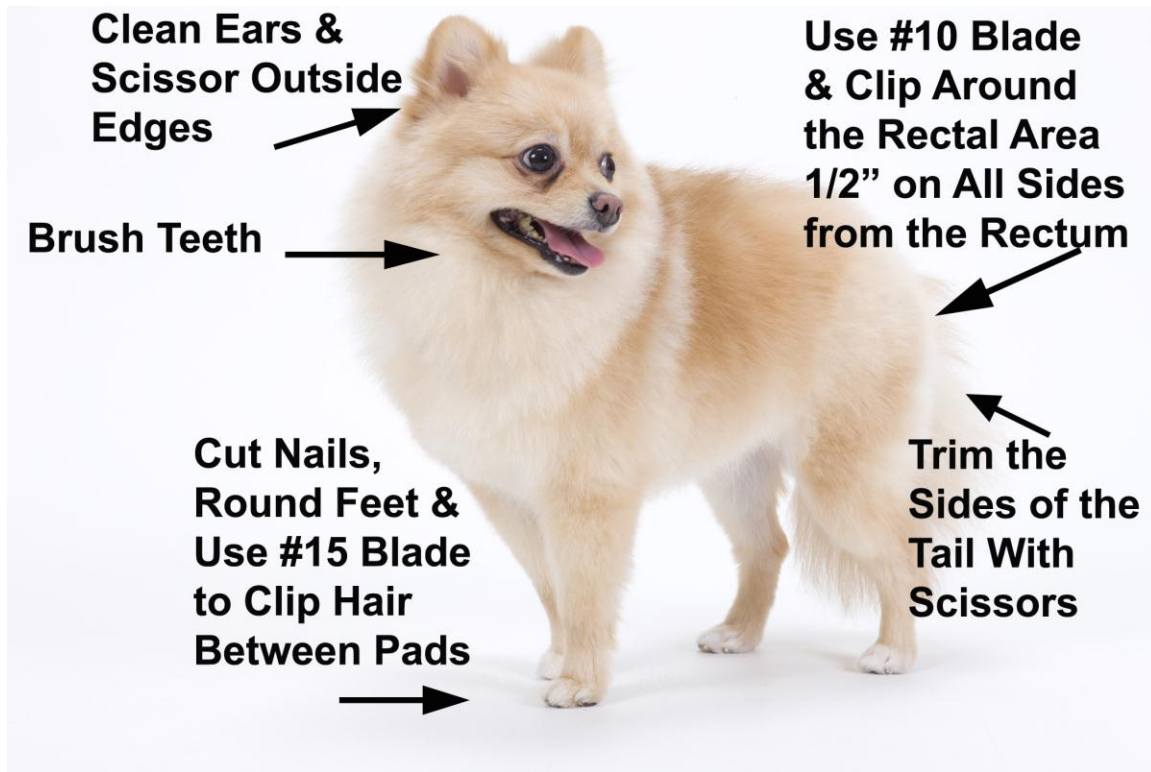
<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

# POMERANIAN



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Pin Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.



**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Sixth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris

**Seventh Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Eighth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Ninth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes, around the outside edges of the ears and on the muzzle.

**Tenth Step:**

Use your shears to round off feet.

**Eleventh Step:**

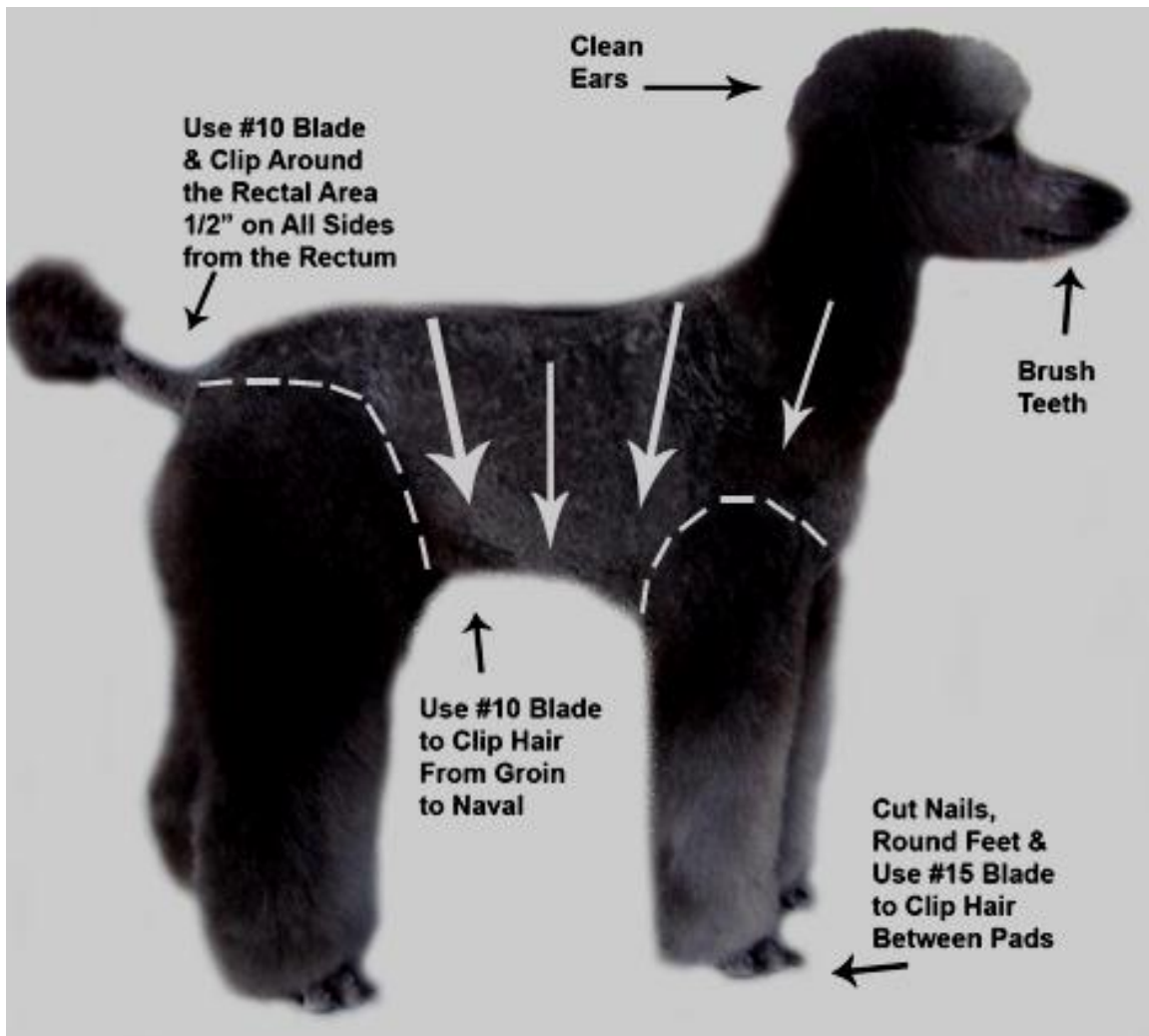
Trim the tail in the shape of a feather, so that it fans out nicely.

**Twelfth Step:**

Fluff the whole body against the grain with your pin brush, use your coat dressing, and fluff again. Hair should stand away from the body. You may also want to lightly spray coat lightly with cologne. You're done!

# POODLE-KENNEL CLIP

**\*see note**



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #7F blade, #10 blade, #15 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade to lift the hair up from between the toes and pads. Trim up both sides of each toe. The ankle bone is your baseline marker. See section on Poodle-Summer Clip for guideline on poodle feet.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 and clip the hair from the rectal area  $\frac{1}{2}$  " on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:****FACE**

- 1) Use your #10 or #15 blade to shave the face. Shave against the grain.
- 2) Go from corner of eye straight across to the nub of the ear
- 3) From the nub of the ear go down into a "V" shape at the throat
- 4) Repeat on the other side.
- 5) The line across the face goes straight across the stop. Shave everything inside these lines on the face and muzzle.

**Sixth Step:****TAIL**

- 1) Use your #15 blade to trim the top side of the tail, going against the grain.
- 1) When trimming the underside of the tail, go with the grain.
- 3) Trim approximately  $\frac{1}{4}$  the length of the tail starting from the base.

**Seventh Step:****TO SET THE PATTERN**

Use the same blade (either your #5F or #7F), and pattern on each step.

- 1) Clip starting at the base of the head, go down the center of the back to the withers (the area in between the shoulders) in a straight line, continuing down the back to the base of the tail.
- 2) Now clip down the sides of the body, clipping about 1 inch to the elbow, and about 1 inch from the flank.
- 3) Clip from the base of the ear, and go down to just above the shoulder, and down the front of the chest.
- 4) Clip the underchest (Lift the front legs for easy access).
- 5) Clip down the hips just above the hip line.
- 6) Now clip the hair with the grain inside the pattern lines.

**Eight Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Ninth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. While drying, keep a damp towel on any parts of the body that are not being dried at that moment. Use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly and as straight as possible. There should not be any curls left in the coat. This type of coat should not be cage dried.

**Tenth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Eleventh Step:**

Go back with the blade you used to set the pattern, and clean up any loose hair in the clipped area so that it is left smooth.

**Twelfth Step:**

Comb the hair on the legs, teasing it out so it fluffs up. Use your shears to finish off the front and the rear legs so they look neat. Blend the long hair with the short hair by either using thinning shears or an attachment comb. The legs should appear to be in a tubular shape.

**Thirteenth Step:**

Fluff and comb out tail. Twist the tip of the hair on the tail and trim off about a ½ inch. Fluff again, and use your curved shears to shape the tail into a round ball. Please see section on tails for more details.

**Fourteenth Step:**

Use your shears to blend the chest area with the front legs and under the chest with the shoulders.

**Fifteenth Step:**

Comb the head and the ears. Please refer to Poodle Puppy clip section for instructions on finishing the head.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if

a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

**\*Note: This style is appropriate for the Standard Poodle, Miniature Poodle, and the Toy Poodle.**

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) for free and watch the Poodle streaming videos.**

# POODLE-PUPPY CLIP

**\*see note**



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade to lift the hair up from between the toes and pads. Trim up both sides of each toe. The ankle bone is your baseline marker. See section on Poodle-Summer Clip for guideline on poodle feet.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 and clip the hair from the rectal area  $\frac{1}{2}$  " on all sides of the rectum. Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Fifth Step:****FACE**

- 1) Use your #10 or #15 blade to shave the face. Shave against the grain.
- 2) Go from corner of eye straight across to the nub of the ear
- 3) From the nub of the ear go down into a "V" shape at the throat
- 4) Repeat on the other side.
- 5) The line across the face goes straight across the stop. Shave everything inside these lines on the face and muzzle.
- 6) If you want a moustache, leave hair on the muzzle from the corners of the mouth to the nose.

**Sixth Step:****TAIL**

- 1) Use your #15 blade to trim the top side of the tail, going against the grain.
- 1) When trimming the underside of the tail, go with the grain.
- 3) Trim approximately  $\frac{1}{4}$  the length of the tail starting from the base.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. While drying, keep a damp towel on any parts of the body that are not being dried at that moment. Use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly and as straight as possible. There should not be any curls left in the coat. This type of coat should not be cage dried.

**Ninth Step:**

Use your comb to fluff up the hair on the entire body, releasing all the curls since this is a shears-only style.

**Tenth Step:**

Use your shears to finish off the front and the rear legs so they look neat, but very fluffy. Use your shears to evenly trim the cuffs.

**Eleventh Step:**

Fluff and comb out tail. Twist the tip of the hair on the tail and trim off about a ½ inch. Fluff again, and use your curved shears to shape the tail into a round ball. Please see section on tails for more details.

**Twelfth Step:**

Comb the head and the ears. Please refer to section on Poodle Head for further explanation on shaping the topknot.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Note: This style is appropriate for the Standard Poodle, Miniature Poodle, and the Toy Poodle.**

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) for free and watch the Poodle streaming videos.**



# **Poodle Top Knot**

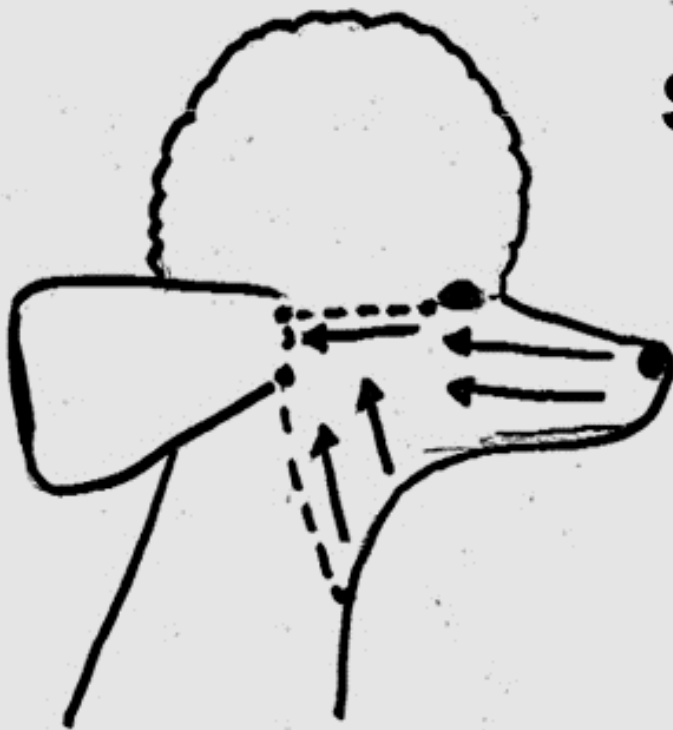
## **FACE**

- 1) Use your #10 or #15 blade to shave the face. Shave against the grain.
- 2) Go from corner of eye straight across to the nub of the ear
- 3) From the nub of the ear go down into a “V” shape at the throat
- 4) Repeat on the other side.
- 5) The line across the face goes straight across the stop. Shave everything inside these lines on the face and muzzle.
- 6) If you want a moustache, leave hair on the muzzle from the corners of the mouth to the nose.

## **Top Knot**

- 1) Comb the hair forward from the top of the top knot. Use your straight shears and trim hair evenly to be flush with eyes.
- 2) Comb the top knot to one side and use your straight shears to cut hair on the side. Repeat on the other side to create a box shaped top knot.
- 3) Use your curved shears and start trimming the top of the top knot to reduce the height of the hair to the desired length and then shape the entire top knot to form a round dome.

**Step 1**



**Step 2**

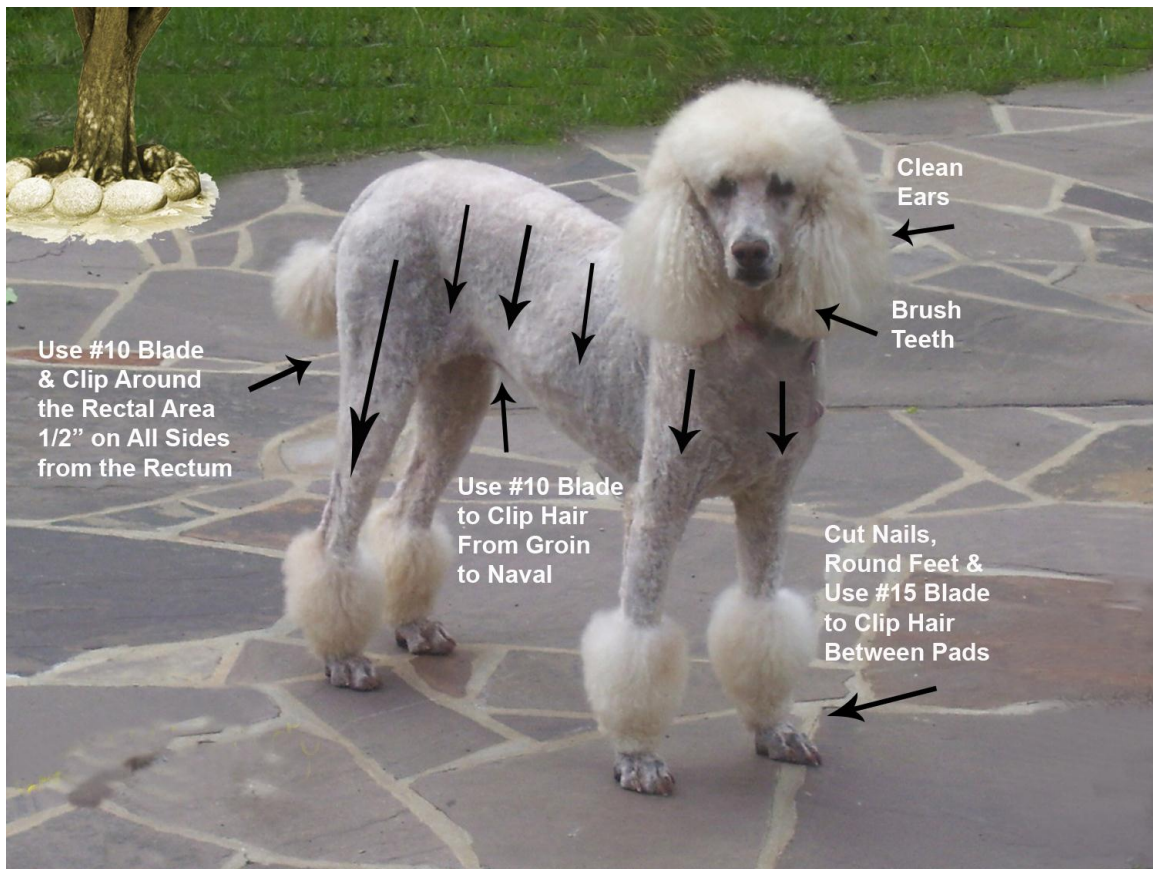


# Step 3



# POODLE-SUMMER CLIP

**\*see note**



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #7F blade, #10 blade, #15 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade to lift the hair up from between the toes and pads. Trim up both sides of each toe. The ankle bone is your baseline marker. See section on for guideline on poodle feet.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 and clip the hair from the rectal area  $\frac{1}{2}$  " on all sides of the rectum. Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Fifth Step:****FACE**

- 1) Use your #10 or #15 blade to shave the face. Shave against the grain.
- 2) Go from corner of eye straight across to the nub of the ear
- 3) From the nub of the ear go down into a "V" shape at the throat
- 4) Repeat on the other side.
- 5) The line across the face goes straight across the stop. Shave everything inside these lines on the face and muzzle.
- 6) If you want a moustache, leave hair on the muzzle from the corners of the mouth to the nose.

**Sixth Step:****TAIL**

- 1) Use your #15 blade to trim the top side of the tail, going against the grain.
- 1) When trimming the underside of the tail, go with the grain.
- 3) Trim approximately  $\frac{1}{4}$  the length of the tail starting from the base.

**Seventh Step:****TO SET THE PATTERN**

Use the same blade (either your #7F, or #10 blade) on each step.

- 1) Start from the base of the skull and clip to the base of the tail.
- 2) Clip the rear leg  $\frac{1}{4}$  in above the hock joint.
- 3) Clip the sides of the neck to the elbow, ending at a line on the front legs that is even with the line at the hock joint on the rear legs.
- 4) Clip the rest of the body, going with the grain.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush the rest of the hair thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your comb and remove all mats before bathing.

**Ninth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

#### **Tenth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

#### **Eleventh Step:**

Fluff dry the topknot, ears, tail and leg pompons. Comb after drying.

#### **Twelfth Step:**

Fluff and comb out tail. Twist the tip of the hair on the tail and trim off about a ½ inch. Fluff again, and use your curved shears to shape the tail into a round ball. Please see section on tails for more details.

#### **Thirteenth Step:**

Comb the hair on the legs (pompoms or bracelets) by teasing it out so it fluffs up. Scissor them into a ball shape. Please see section on feet for further details.

#### **Fourteenth Step:**

Comb the head and the ears. Tease the head to increase fluffiness. Please refer to section Puppy Clip on heads for further explanation on shaping the topknot.

#### **Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

**\*Note: This style is appropriate for the Standard Poodle, Miniature Poodle, and the Toy Poodle.**

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) for free and watch how to groom the Poodle streaming videos.**

## **Notes**

## PORTUGUESE WATER DOG (Retriever Clip)



### Tools Needed

Bristle Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana



**First Step:**

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your bristle brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears to trim any unruly curls so that all the hair on the entire dog looks even. Only the hair at the end of the tail should be left long.

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears to round off feet.

**Eighth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks. You're done.

# PORTUGUESE WATER DOG

## (Lion Clip)



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area 1/2" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

**TO SET THE PATTERN** Use your #10 blade to rough cut these areas before bathing. Always trim going with the grain. Start at the middle of the back to the base of the tail. Clip the whole area of the rear end of the dog. Also clip the entire back legs.

**FACE**

- 1) Trim from the outer corner of eye to the front of the ear. Trim from the corner of the mouth to the bottom of the ear.
- 2) Trim down the muzzle starting from under the eye.
- 3) Trim on top of the muzzle, which starts between the eyes, down to the tip of the nose.
- 4) Trim any hair from around the lips.

**UNDERSIDE**

- 1) Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**LEGS/ TAIL**

- 1) Start at the middle of the back and trim down to the base of the tail.
- 2) Trim rear end completely.
- 3) Trim all hair down the rear legs to the feet.
- 4) Trim tail from the base, leaving the top 1/4 long at the tip.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

### **Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

### **Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff! Use shears to even up hair on body.

### **Tenth Step:**

#### **HEAD**

- 1) Use your shears and trim hair on top of head so it blends smoothly into the ear area.
- 2) Trim the bottom of the ears so they line up with the jaw bone.

### **Eleventh Step:**

#### **LEGS**

- 1) Trim front legs leaving them full and rounded but so they appear straight (tubular).
- 2) Use shears to round off feet.

### **Twelfth Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto the trimmed areas. On the untrimmed areas, spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

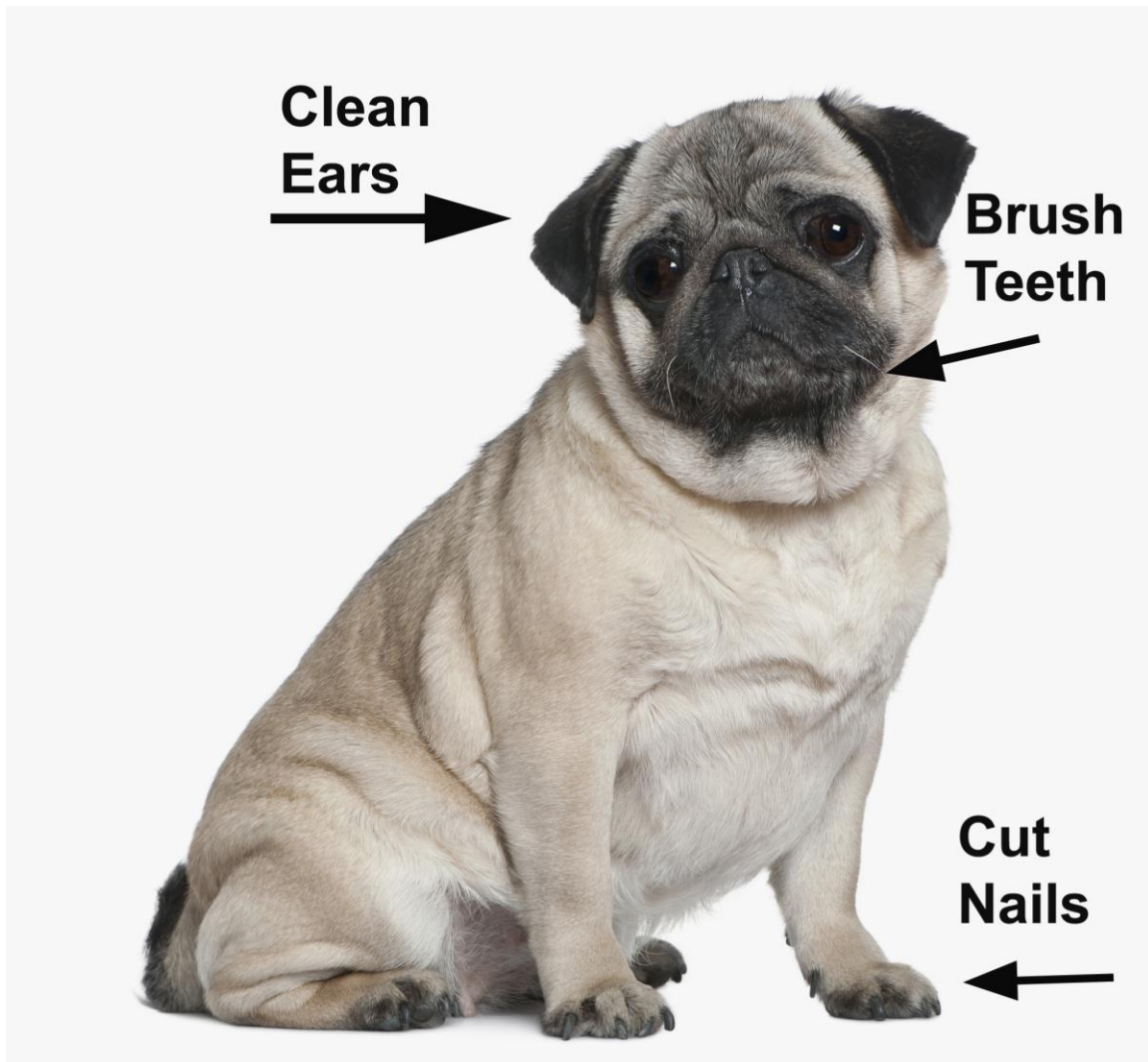
### **Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

## **Notes**

# PUG



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Clean wrinkles on body. Wash any folds on face. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

Clean and rinse all folds in the face

**Option:** De-shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

## PULI (Brushed Coat)



**\*Note:** For a corded Puli, see directions for Komondor

### Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

#### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area 1/2" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

Put dog in kennel on towels and dry with a forced air dryer.

**Do Not Brush After Drying****Ninth Step:**

If needed, separate cording by hand all the way down to the skin. For a neat appearance part the hair on the back from the base of skull to base of tail.

**Tenth Step:**

Use your shears to round off feet.

**Eleventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

# PYRENEAN SHEPHERD



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake, Pin Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, crème rinse, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Crème Rinse** after rinsing shampoo out, making sure you rinse the crème rinse out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:**

Use your shears to round off feet.

**Eleventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. Brush with your pin brush to create a fluffy look. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

# REDBONE COONHOUND



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, baby powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Clean wrinkles on body. Wash any folds on face. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-Shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# RHODESIAN RIDGEBACK



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-Shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# ROTTWEILER



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Wash any folds on face. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-Shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle. Trim the edges of the ears.

**Seventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# SAINT BERNARD



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Wash any folds on face. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-Shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to remove straggly hair on feet. Clean up area between hocks and feet. Round off feet.

**Ninth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. You're done!

# SALUKI



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana



**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Comb and fluff up featherings on ears, tail and legs.

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your shears to even featherings on legs. Taper the tail fringe to the end of the tail starting wider at the base.

**Ninth Step:**

Use your shears to trim outside edges of the feet.

**Tenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne. You're done!

# SAMOYED



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-Shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your shears to clean up any straggly hair between the toes and around the paws.

**Ninth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# SCHIPPERKE



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Clean wrinkles on body. Wash any folds on face. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your shears to create an even slope on the underchest ending at the flank.

**Ninth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to round out the hindquarters.

**Tenth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to remove any straggly hair on the feet and between the toes.

**Eleventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**



# SCHNAUZER (Giant)

**\*Use for Standard & Miniature**



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb

Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

Clipper, #5F #7F or #8 ½ blade, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana



**First Step:**

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area  $\frac{1}{2}$ " inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your comb and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

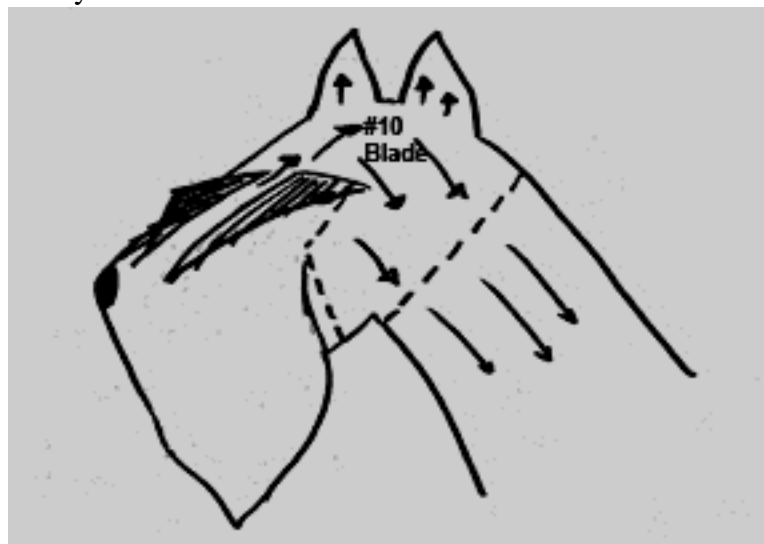
**Tenth Step:**  
**BODY/LEGS/TAIL**

Use your #5F, #7F or 8 ½ blade.

- 1) Clip the body starting at the base of the skull and clip the back, following the natural contours and ending at the base of the tail.
- 2) Clip around entire tail using the same blade used for the body, so it will be smooth and blend in.
- 3) Clip the sides of the shoulders to the front elbows.
- 4) Clip the rear legs to a point just above the hock.
- 5) Clip the sides of the body down to the flank. Using the elbow as your baseline measurement, create a shallow line inclining from the elbow to the flank.
- 6) Clip the neck down to the breastbone.
- 7) Use your thinning shears to lightly thin out the underchest, following the body contours.
- 8) Use your shears to make sure the entire body, legs and tail are blended smoothly together.
- 9) Use your thinning shears to lightly trim the leg furnishings.
- 10) Use your shears to round off feet.

**Eleventh Step:**  
**FACE/EARS**

- 1) Use your #10 blade and clip the ears cleanly on both sides starting at the base.
- 2) Use your shears to neaten up the outside edges of the ears.
- 3) Use your #10 blade to trim the face by combing the hair forward and then trimming ¼ in. starting at the top of the head and going to the base of the skull. Continue trimming from the eye up to the ears and down the cheeks.
- 4) Use your shears to trim the eyebrows. Comb forward and then start trimming at the outside corner, going diagonally to the center and creating a visor shape. Trim any straggly hair between the eyebrows at the stop, creating a 'V'.
- 5) Use your shears to remove any extra hair from the beard, creating a long, straight look. Thin out the line that starts at the front corner of the mouth and ends at the corner of the eyebrow.



**Twelfth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

# SCOTTISH DEERHOUND



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fifth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Sixth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Seventh Step:**

Use your thinning shears to clean up any straggly hair on the ears, head, cheek area, neck, throat and body.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to trim beard and whiskers. Leave them full and squared off.

**Ninth Step:**

Use your shears to round off feet.

**Tenth Step:**

Use your shears to even the tail featherings. Even the leg featherings by combing forward and trimming.

**Eleventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

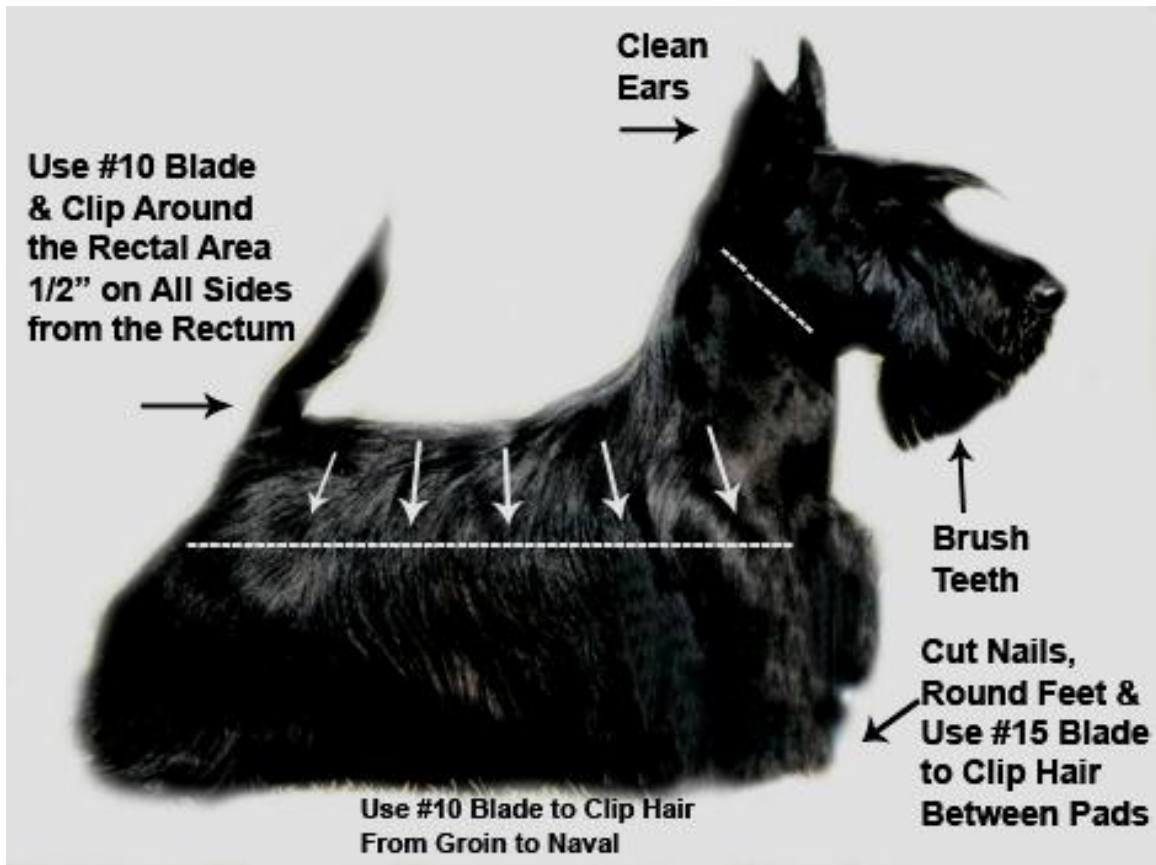
<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

# SCOTTISH TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #5F blade, #7F, or #8 1/2 blade, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your comb and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:****BODY/LEGS/TAIL**

Use your #5F, #7F or 8 ½ blade.

- 1) Trim the body starting at the base of the skull and go down the back ending at the base of the tail.
- 2) Trim the sides of the neck to halfway between the top of the shoulder and elbow.
- 3) Trim the forechest to right above the breastbone.

- 4) Trim the top side of the tail. Use your shears to taper the tail to a point at the tip, leaving it wider at the base.
- 5) Use your thinning shears to blend the hair anywhere the natural contours of the body change so the entire body looks smooth.
- 6) Use your shears to round off feet.

#### **Eleventh Step:**

##### **FACE/EARS**

- 1) Use your #10 blade to trim the face by combing the hair forward and then trimming  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. starting at the top of the eye (forehead) and going to the base of the skull. Continue trimming from the eye up to the ears and down the cheeks.
- 2) Use your #10 blade and trim the ears cleanly on both sides, going from the base outward.
- 3) Use your shears to neaten up the top outside edges of the ears leaving a tuft of hair on top and at the front inside edge of the ear. Leave hair at this location on both sides of the ear.
- 4) Fold the top half of the ear down and take your shears and trim the hair at the base of the ear, so that it is even with the folded edge.
- 4) Use your shears to trim the eyebrows into a visor shape. Comb forward and then start trimming at the outside corner, going to the center.
- 5) Use your thinning shears to remove any extra hair from the beard, creating a long, straight look. Thin out the line going from the corner of the mouth to the eyebrow so it's straight.



#### **Twelfth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

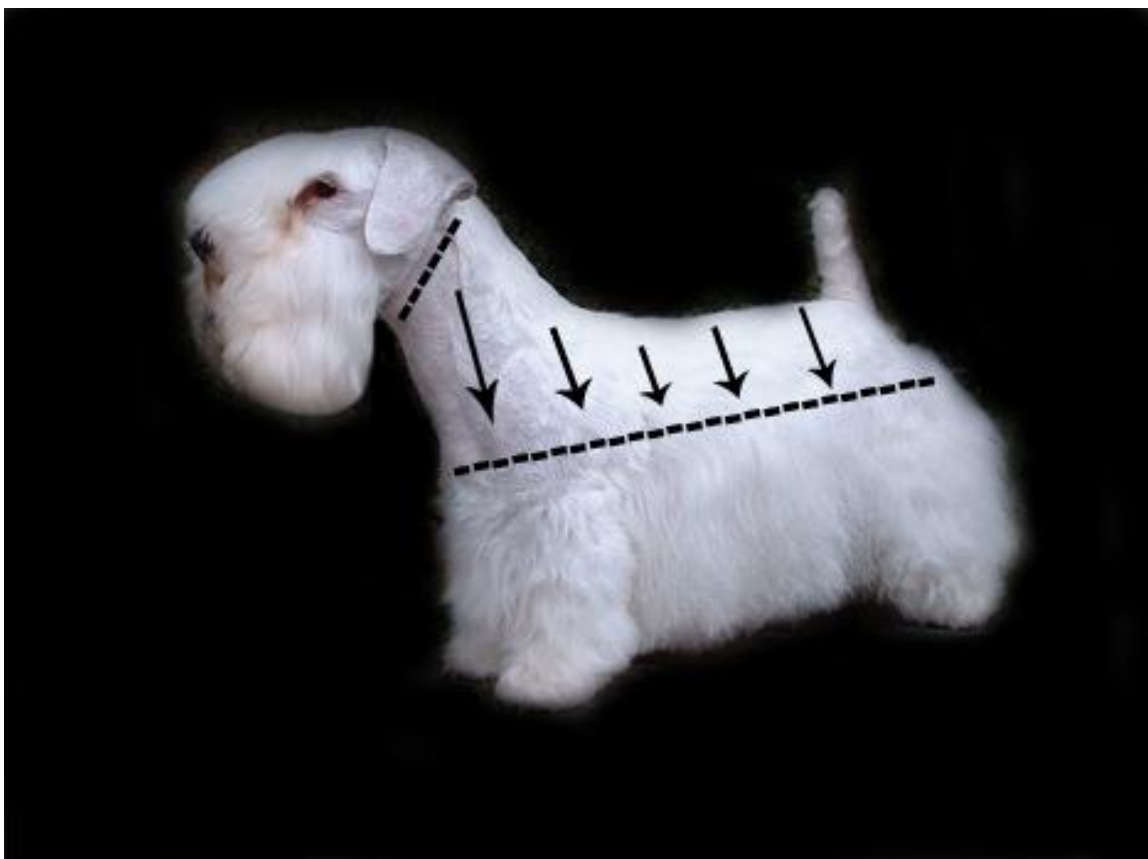
**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

# SEALYHAM TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb

Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

Clipper, #5F, #7F, or #8 ½ blade, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your comb and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:****BODY/LEGS/TAIL**

Use your #5F, #7F or 8 ½ blade.

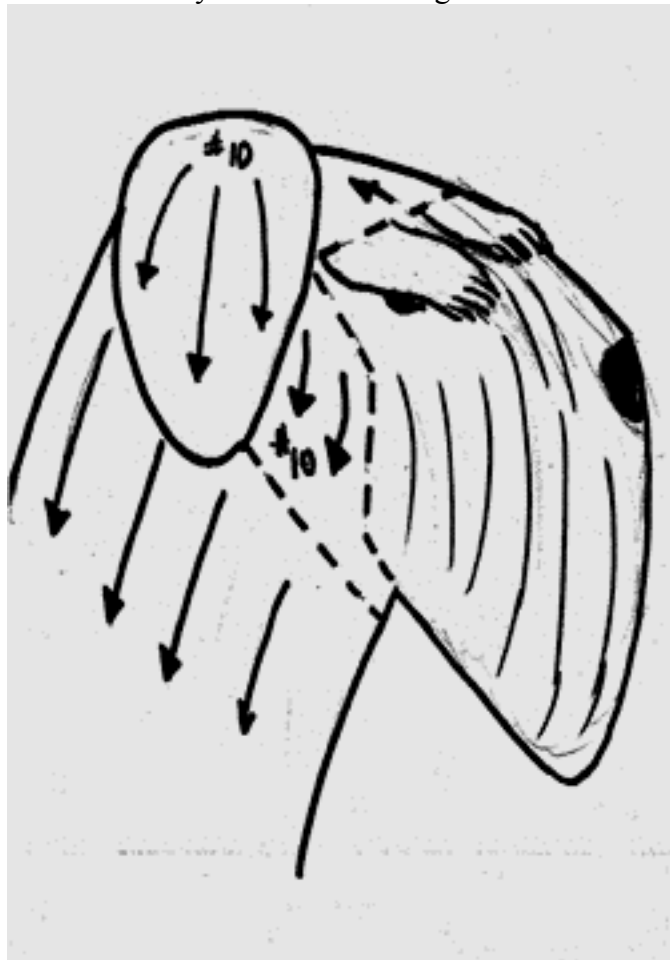
- 1) Trim the body starting at the base of the skull and trim the back, following the natural contours and ending at the base of the tail.
- 2) Trim around entire tail using the same blade used for the body so it will be smooth and blend.

- 3) Trim the sides of the shoulders to the front elbows.
- 4) Use your shears to trim the forechest stopping right above the breastbone.
- 5) Use your shears to make sure the entire body, legs and tail are blended smoothly together.
- 6) Use your shears to round off feet.

### **Eleventh Step:**

#### **FACE/EARS**

- 1) Use your #10 blade to trim the face by combing the hair forward and then trimming  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. starting at the top of the eye (forehead) and going to the base of the skull. Continue trimming from the eye up to the ears and down the cheeks.
- 2) Use your #10 blade and trim the ears cleanly on both sides, going from the base outward..
- 3) Use your shears to neaten up the outside edges of the ears.
- 4) Use your shears to trim the eyebrows. Comb forward and then start trimming at the outside corner, going to the center. Leave the eyebrows full and blend it into the hair on the face.
- 5) Use your thinning shears to remove any extra hair from the beard, creating a long, smooth look. Beard is left full, but not bushy. Thin out the line going from the corner of the mouth to the eyebrow so it's straight.



**Twelfth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

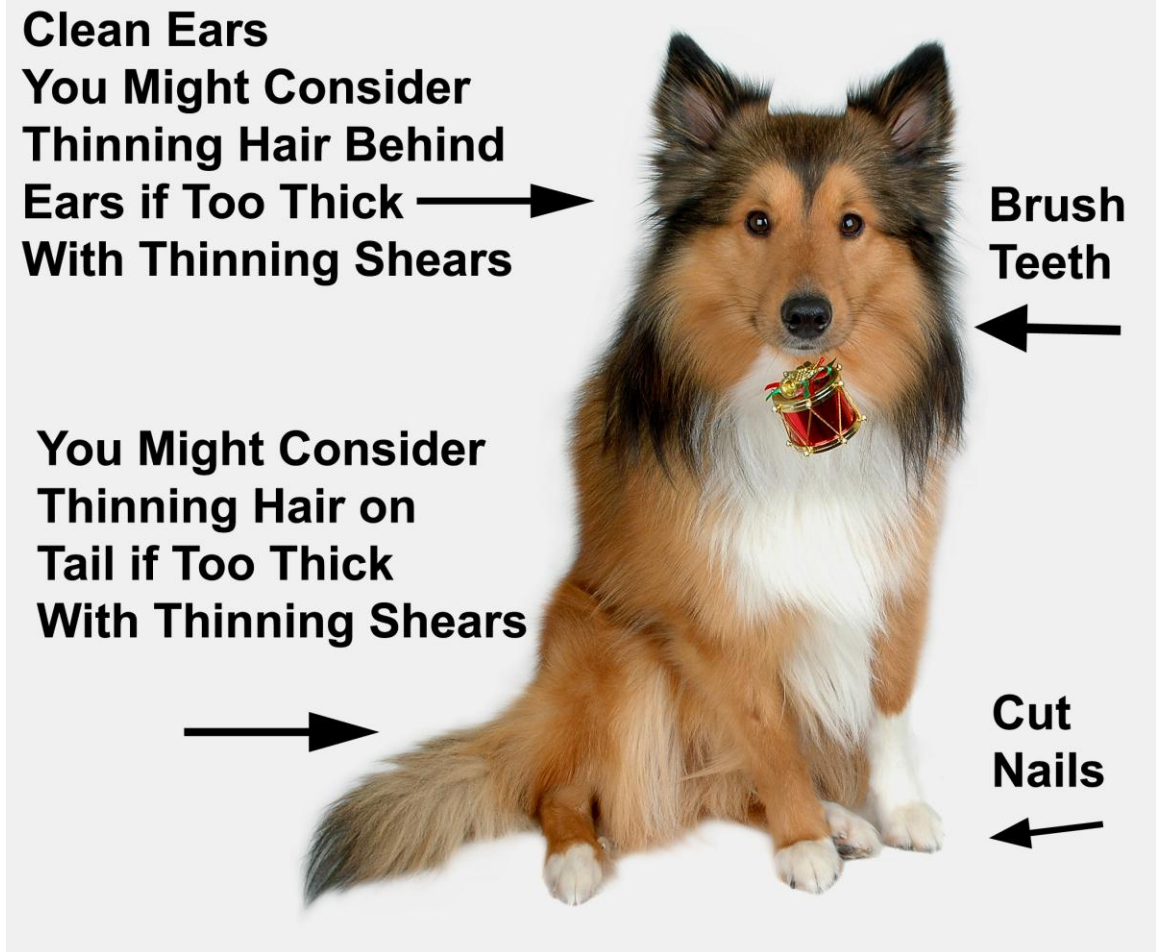
**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

# SHETLAND SHEEPDOG



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Pin Brush, Soft Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-Shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Comb and fluff! Comb out featherings.

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to thin out extra hair on top of the tail and near the ears.

**Ninth Step:**

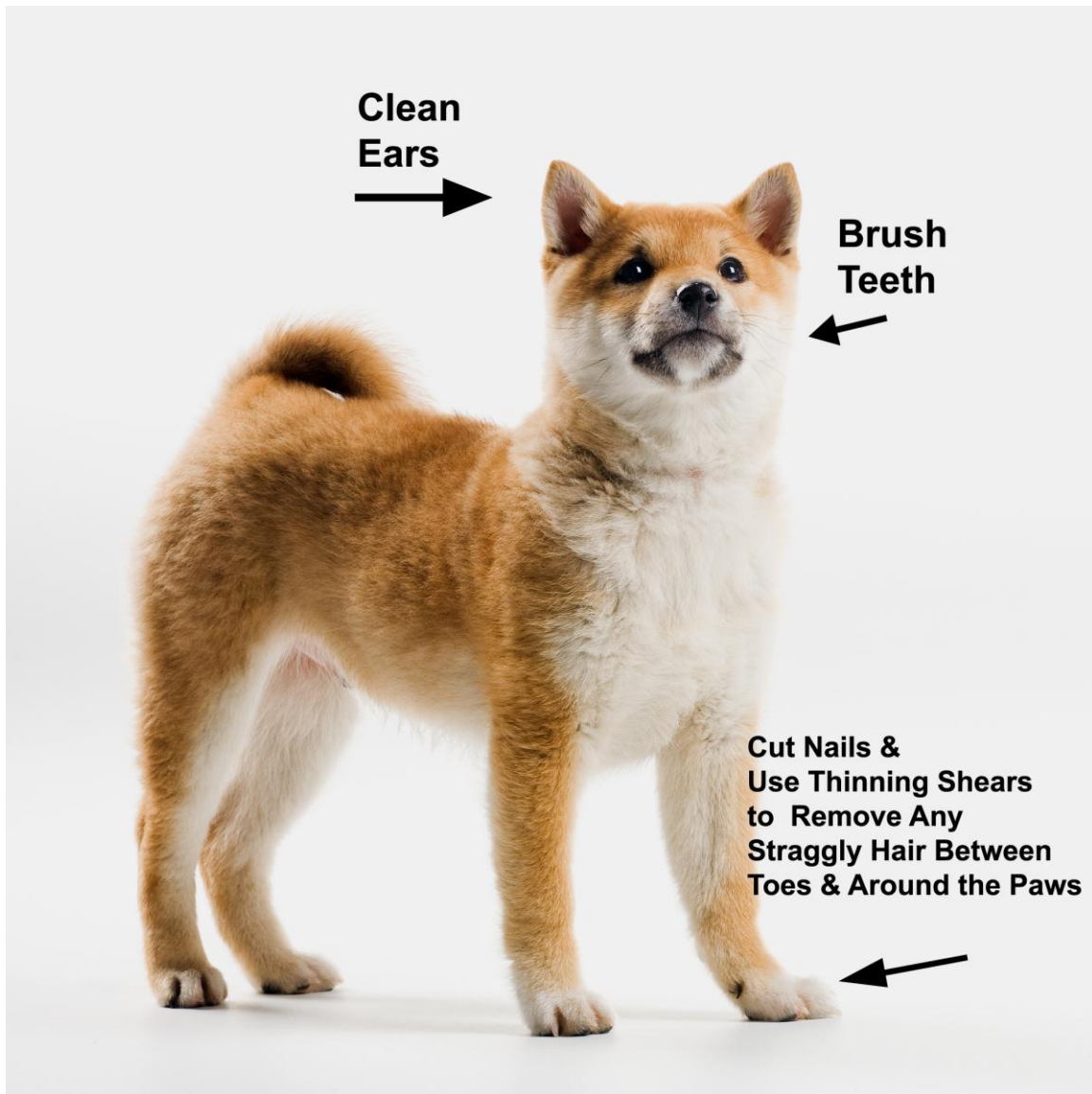
Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. Use your pin brush to lift up coat against grain to give it body. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# SHIBA INU



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-Shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Use your thinning shears to trim any straggly hair around the paws and between the toes.

**Eighth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through to create sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks. You're done!

# SHIH TZU



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Soft Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade  
Small Rubber Bands, small bows

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, crème rinse, conditioner, coat conditioner, spray cologne

**First Step:**

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½” inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Clean wrinkles on body. Wash any folds on face. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Crème Rinse** after rinsing shampoo out, leave in for a few minutes, making sure you rinse the crème rinse out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:**

Use your shears to round off feet.

**Eleventh:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

## **Become a Certified Pet Groomer**

**Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

## **Notes**

# SIBERIAN HUSKY



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Shedding Blade, Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.



**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-Shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Seventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to clean up straggly hair around paws and between the toes.

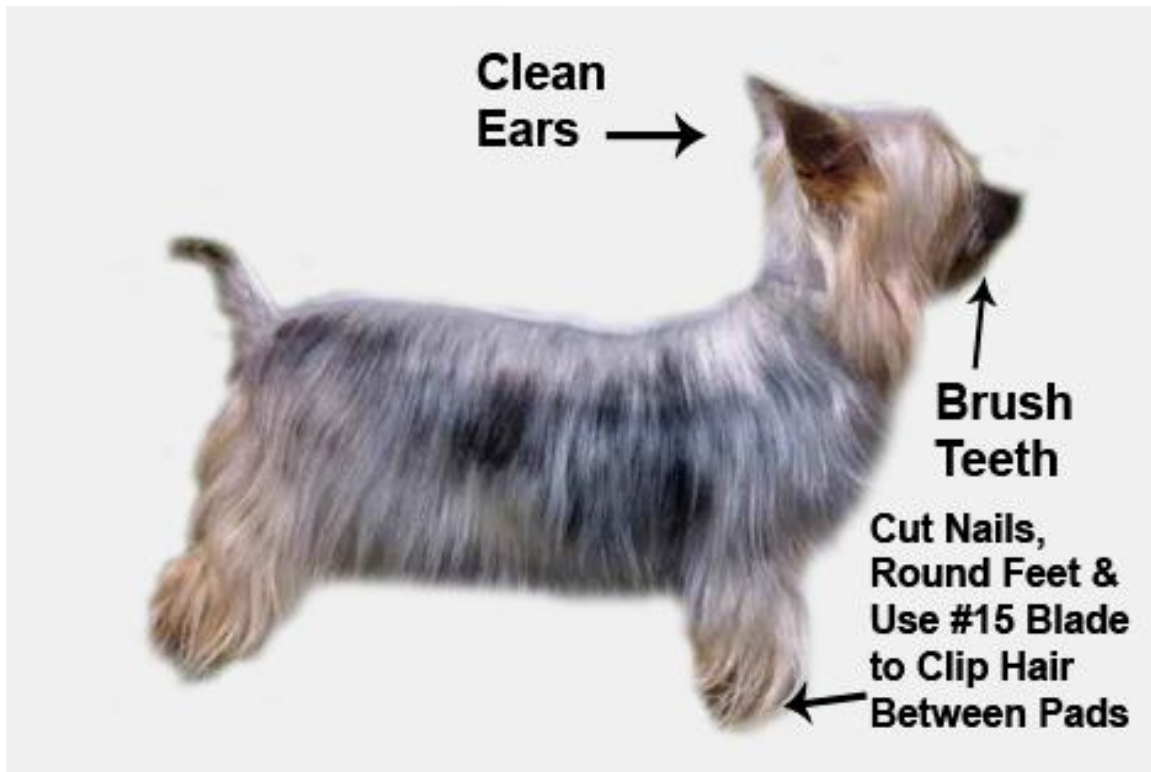
**Ninth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks. You're done!

# SILKY TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Soft Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, coat dressing, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fifth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Crème Rinse** Apply crème rinse after rinsing shampoo out. Rinse out crème rinse before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Sixth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Seventh Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Eighth Step:**

Part the hair down the middle of the back from the top of the head to the base of the tail. Comb hair downward and use your coat dressing to keep part in place.

**Ninth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to trim the feathering on the tail to approximately ½ inch long.

**Use #10 Blade and Shave 1/4 of the Ear on Both Sides of the Ear Leather. This is Called Tipping the Ear.**

**Use Your Scissors & Scissor Around the Outside Edges of the Ear**



**Tenth Step:**

From the top of the head going down to the tip of the nose, part the hair in the middle and brush on both sides of the muzzle. Use your #10 blade to trim hair on the ears going slightly past the outline of the ears. Use shears to clean up the outside edges of the ears. Please refer to page on heads for common head trims.

**Eleventh Step:**

Use your shears to round off feet.

**Twelfth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

# SKYE TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake, Soft Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, crème rinse, coat dressing, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Crème Rinse** Apply crème rinse and rinse out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:**

Part the hair down the middle of the back from the top of the head to the base of the tail. Comb hair downward and use your coat dressing to keep part in place.

**Eleventh Step:**

Use your shears to taper the hair on the tail to a point. The fringe is kept long and heavy.

**Twelfth Step:**

Using your comb, comb from the top of the head going down to the tip of the nose, part the hair in the middle and brush on both sides of the muzzle. Comb the hair on the ears outward, giving a winged effect.

**Thirteenth Step:**

Use your shears to round off feet.

**Fourteenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>



## **Notes**

# SPINONE ITALIANO



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Scissors

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Seventh Step:**

Use your thinning shears and thin any straggly hair on the body, head and cheeks. Trim ears quite close.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your shears to even out the eyebrows.

**Ninth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks. You're done!

# STAFFORDSHIRE BULL TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-Shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage to create sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# SUSSEX SPANIEL



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your comb and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to trim any straggle hair from the body, just enough so it looks smooth.

**Eleventh Step:**

Use your shears to even out leg furnishings.

**Twelfth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to clean up any straggly hair from the ears, eyes, cheeks, face (only lightly) and muzzle.

**Thirteenth Step:**

Use your shears to clean up hair between toes and to round off feet.

**Fourteenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

## **Become a Certified Pet Groomer**

**Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

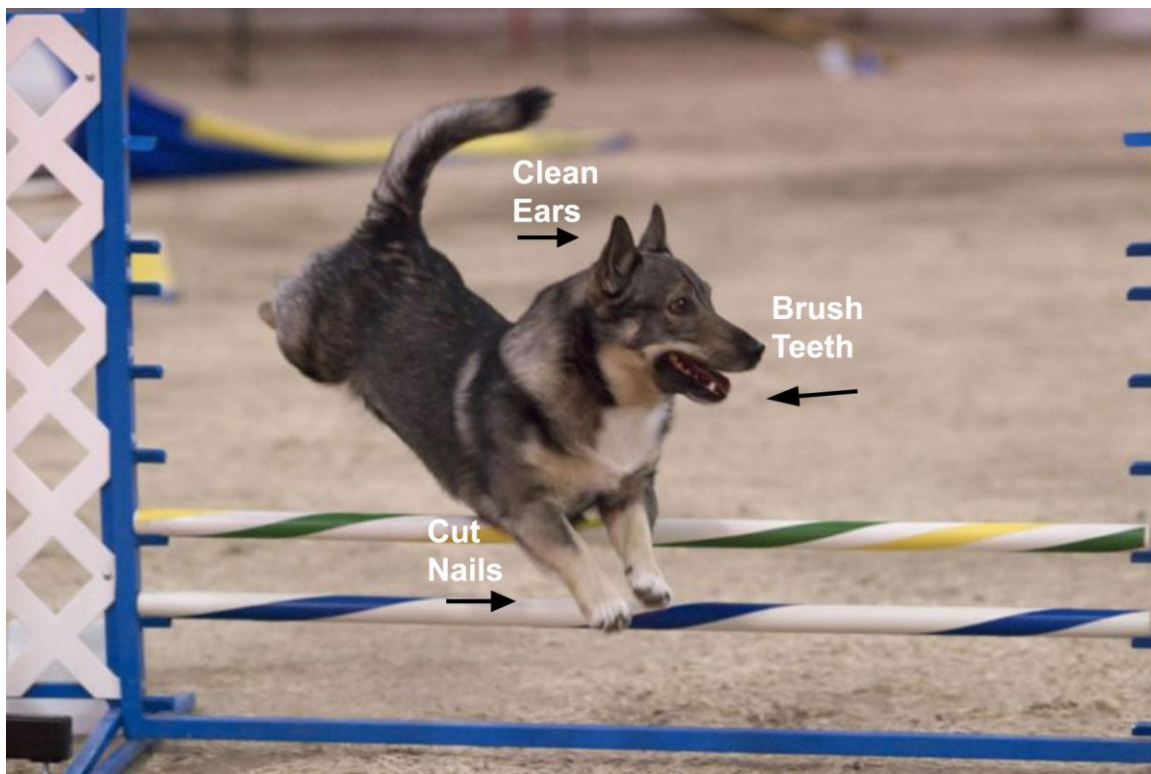
**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>



## **Notes**

# SWEDISH VALHUND



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Shedding Blade  
Nail Clipper

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

### Third Step:

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. Remove all dead hair with your shedding blade.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.

(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-Shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# TIBETAN MASTIFF



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Shedding Blade  
Nail Clipper

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. Remove all dead hair with your shedding blade.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-Shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# TIBETAN SPANIEL



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

### Third Step:

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½” inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Sixth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Seventh Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Eighth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Ninth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through, fluffing forechest. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# TIBETAN TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana



**First Step:**

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

If needed, use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Fifth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Sixth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Seventh Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Eighth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks. You're done!

# TOY FOX TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Shedding Blade  
Nail Clipper

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana.

### **First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. Remove all dead hair with your shedding blade.

**Fourth Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet.  
(Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-Shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

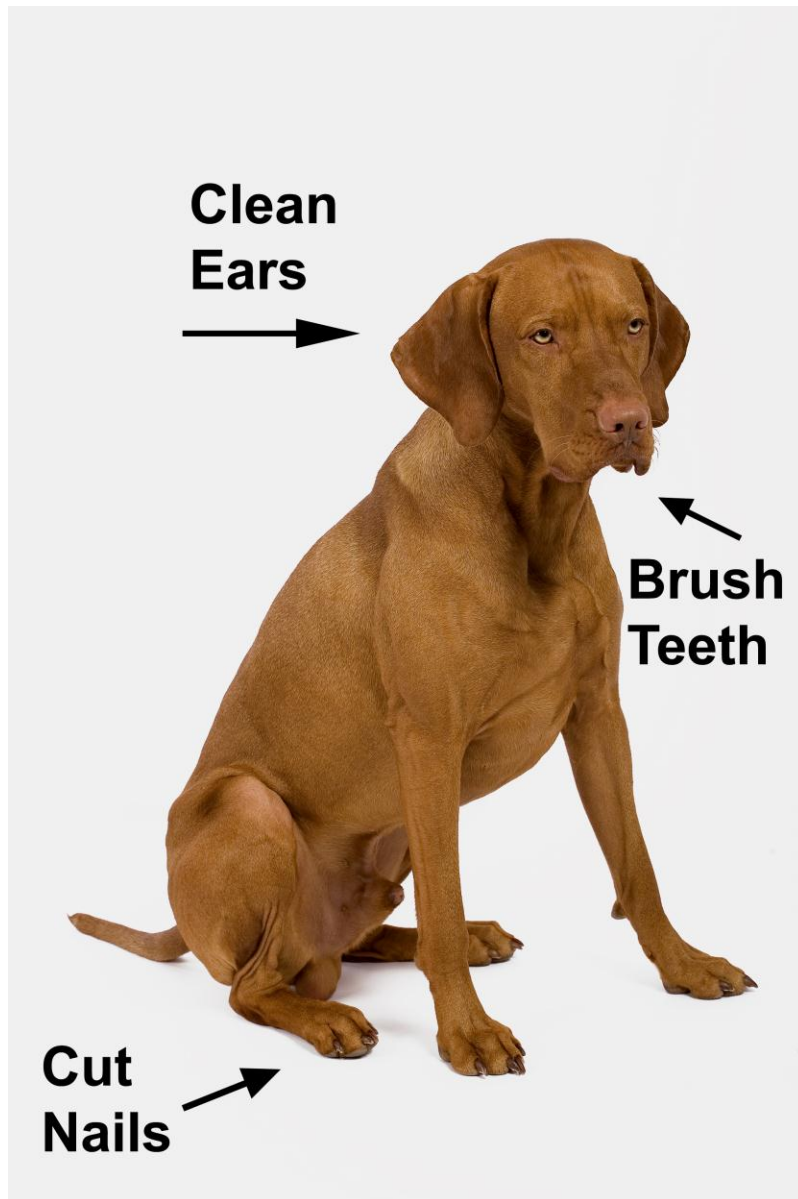
Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# VIZSLA



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Wash any folds on face. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-Shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Sixth Step:**

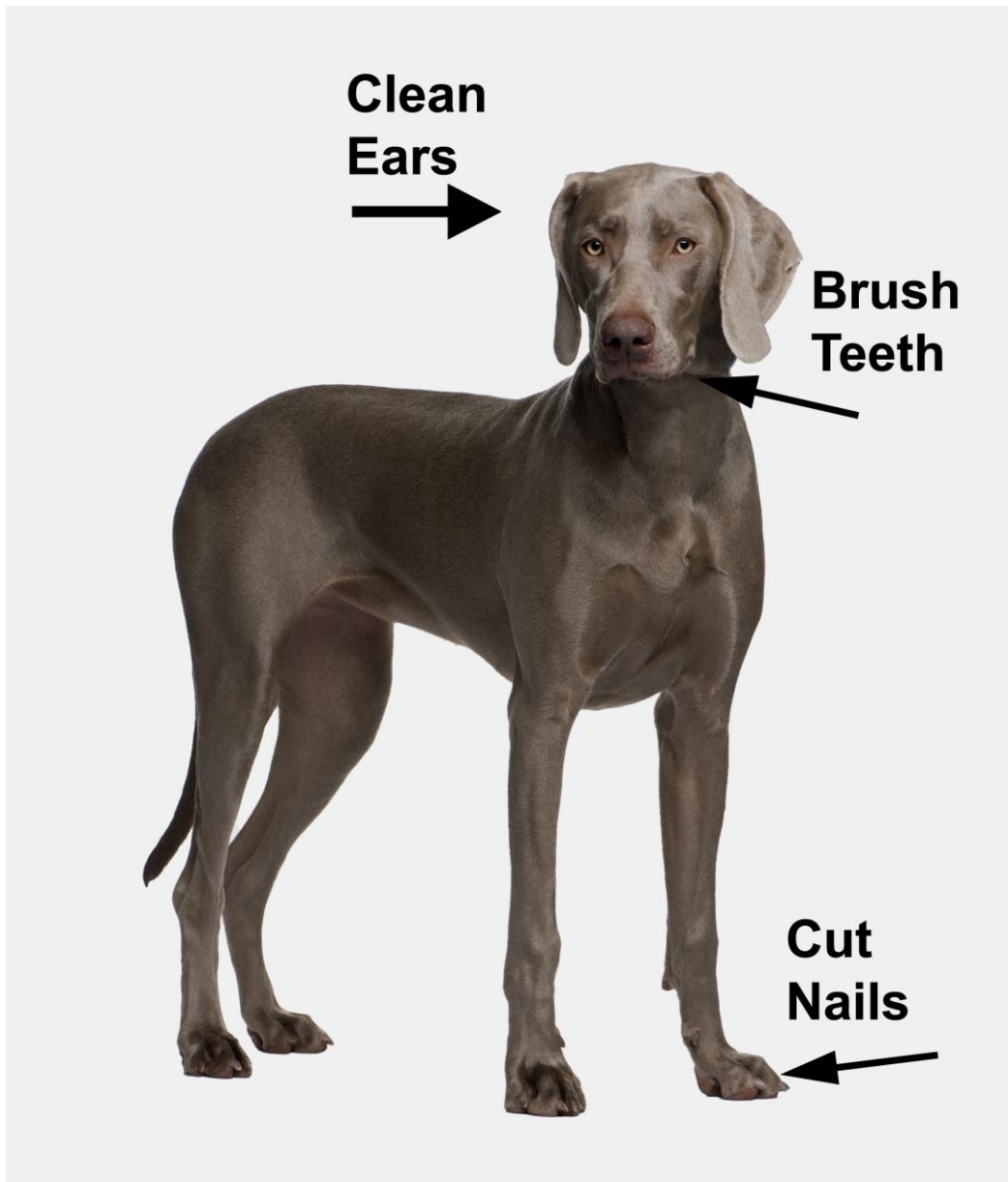
Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage to create sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# WEIMARANER



## Tools Needed

Rubber Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner,  
shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your rubber brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Wash any folds on face. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris. **Option:** De-Shed Treatment

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Seventh Step:**

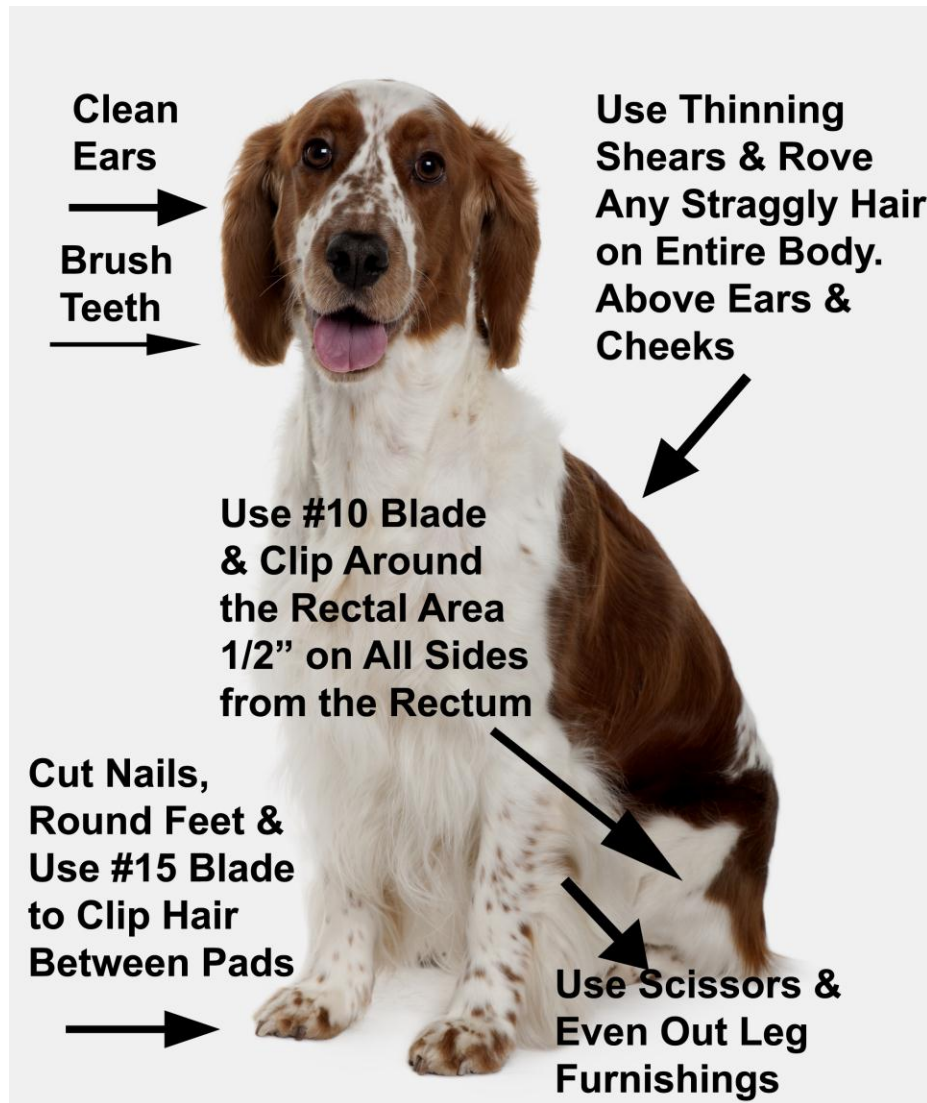
Hand rub conditioner onto coat. Massage to create sheen. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# WELSH SPRINGER SPANIEL



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb

Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana



**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Seventh Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to trim even out any unruly hair on the coat.

**Eleventh Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

**Twelfth Step:**

Use thinning shears to clean up any straggly hair on ears and cheeks.

**Thirteenth Step:**

Use your shears to even out leg furnishings on the ends.

Use your shears to round off feet.

**Fourteenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

## **Notes**

# WELSH TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #5F, #7F, or #8 1/2 blade, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

### Second Step:

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your comb and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. Clean wrinkles on body. Wash any folds on face. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:****BODY/LEGS/TAIL**

Use your #5F, #7F or #8 ½ blade.

- 1) Trim the body starting at the base of the skull and go down the back ending at the base of the tail. Trim the tail close to the body.
- 2) Trim the sides of the neck to halfway between the top of the shoulder and elbow.
- 3) Trim the sides of the back to the flank at the rear and to the hips at the rear legs.
- 4) Trim the chest and shoulders to the arm in front and the elbow at the side, using the breastbone as your baseline measurement to insure chest is even.
- 5) Use your shears to trim under the underchest creating a shallow incline from the elbow to the flank. Follow the body contours.

- 7) Use your shears to trim the front legs into a tubular shape so they are straight.
- 8) Use your shears to trim the rear legs going with the contours of the legs and showing the bend in the stifle.
- 9) Use your shears to make sure the entire body, legs and tail are blended smoothly together.
- 10) Use your shears to round off feet.

### **Eleventh Step:**

#### **FACE/EARS**

- 1) Use your #10 blade to trim the face by combing the hair forward and then trimming  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. starting at the top of the eye (forehead) and going to the base of the skull. Continue trimming from the eye up to the ears and down the cheeks.
- 2) Use your #10 blade and trim the ears cleanly on both sides, going from the base outward.
- 3) Use your shears to neaten up the outside edges of the ears.
- 4) Use your shears to trim the eyebrows into a 'V' shape. Comb forward and then start trimming at the outside corner, going diagonally to the center. At the stop, remove any straggly hair between the eyebrows.
- 5) Use your thinning shears to trim straggly hair on the muzzle.
- 5) Use your shears to remove any extra hair from the beard, creating a long, smooth look. Beard is left full, but not bushy.

### **Twelfth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

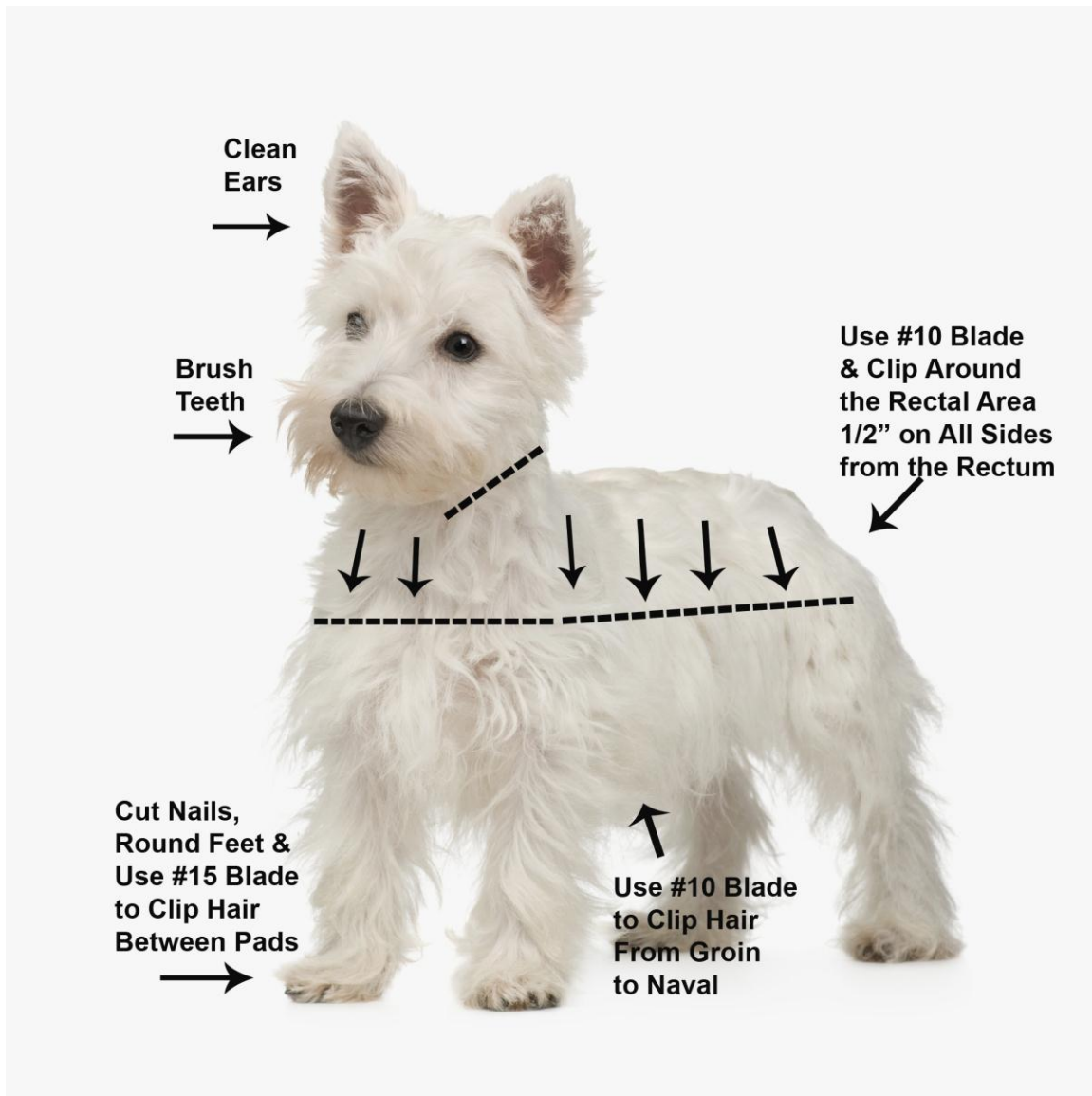
### **Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

## **Notes**

# WEST HIGHLAND WHITE TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #5F, #7F, or #8 1/2 blade, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana



**First Step:**

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area  $\frac{1}{2}$ " inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:**  
**BODY/LEGS/TAIL**

Use your #5F, #7F or #8 ½ blade.

- 1) Trim the body starting at the base of the skull and go down the back ending at the base of the tail.
- 2) Trim the sides of the neck to halfway between the top of the shoulder and elbow.
- 3) Trim the sides of the back to the flank at the rear and to the hips at the rear legs, and following the contours of the body.
- 4) Trim the forechest to right above the breastbone.
- 5) Trim the tail on the top side from the base to the tip. Leave the hair longer on the underside. Use your shears to taper the tail from wider at the base and narrower at the tip.
- 6) Use your shears to make sure the entire body, legs and tail are blended smoothly together.
- 7) Use your shears to round off feet.

**Eleventh Step:**  
**FACE/EARS**

- 1) Use your #10 blade to trim the top ¼ of the ears on both sides.
- 2) Use your shears to neaten up the outside edges of the ears.
- 3) Use your thinning shears to trim the eyebrows into an awning shape without division between them.
- 4) Use your thinning shears to style the head into a rounded shape.
- 5) Use your thinning shears to thin any straggly or extra hair under the eyes.

**Twelfth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

## **Notes**

# WHEATEN TERRIER

## (Soft Coated)



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Dematting Comb or Rake  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area  $\frac{1}{2}$ " inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your dematting comb or rake and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:**

**HEAD**

On top of head, comb hair up and use shears to trim hair to 1 ½ in.

**Eleventh Step:**

**EARS**

Use your #10 blade to trim hair on ears on both sides outward from base.

Use your shears to neaten up outside edges of ears.

**Twelfth Step:**

**FACE/BEARD**

Trim sides of face until hair lays flat on cheeks leaving hair longer closer to the eyes.

Use your thinning shears to neaten uneven hair from beard by combing it forward and trimming.



**Thirteenth Step:**

**THROAT/NECK**

Use your thinning shears to blend the ruff or collar into the longer hair on back of neck and into the shorter hair on the throat and chest area. Start right behind the ears and go under the throat and neck gradually blending.

**Fourteenth Step:**

**BODY**

Use your thinning shears to smooth and reduce bushy areas on neck, chest, sides and legs.

**Fifteenth Step:**

Use your shears to round off feet.

**Sixteenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**\*Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

**Become a Certified Pet Groomer****Hands On**

Wag My Tail Pet Grooming School  
1-888-Wag-MyTail

**Online**

<http://www.OnlineGroomingSchool.com>

**Order DVDs**

<http://www.HowToGroom.net>

# WHIPPET



## Tools Needed

Bristle Brush

Nail Clipper, Straight Shears

Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana



**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your shears and clean up the whiskers and any long hair on the face, over the eyes and on the muzzle.

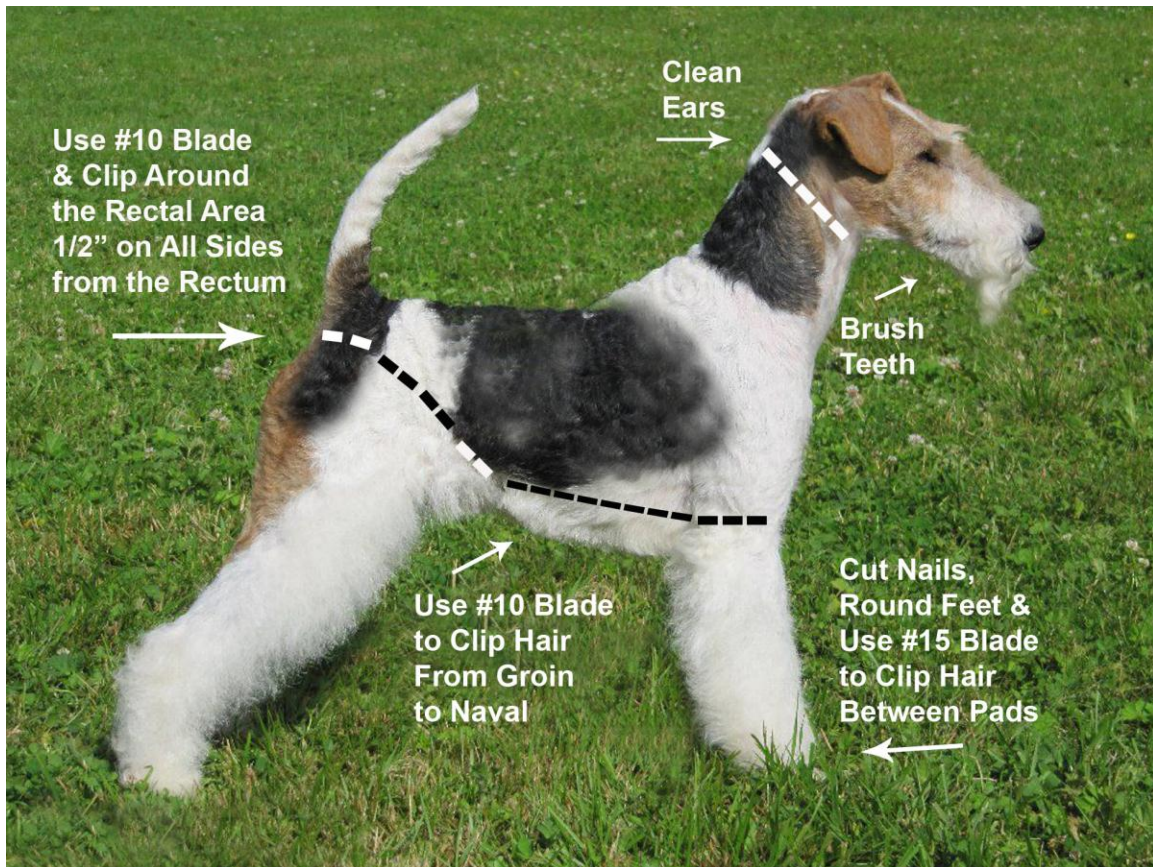
**Seventh Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Brush through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks. You're done!

# WIRE FOX TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears  
Clipper, #5F, #7F, or 8 ½ blade, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated ear powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

### First Step:

Use medicated powder lightly to dry ears. Gently pull out any dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly. If you encounter any matted areas, use your comb and remove all mats before bathing.

**Seventh Step:**

**Bath Time** Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:****BODY/LEGS/TAIL**

Use your #5F, #7F or #8 ½ blade.

- 1) Trim the body starting at the base of the skull and go down the back ending at the base of the tail.
- 2) Trim the sides of the back to the flank at the rear and to the hips at the rear legs.
- 3) Trim the sides of the neck to halfway between the top of the shoulder and elbow.

- 4) Trim the chest and shoulders to the arm in front and the elbow at the side, using the breastbone as your baseline measurement to insure chest is even.
- 5) Trim the underchest, creating a shallow incline line from the elbow to the hip by and following the contours of the body.
- 6) Use your shears to trim the chest so it blends in smoothly starting at the neck and going downward.
- 7) Use your shears to trim the front legs into a tubular shape that looks straight.. Leave the front legs fuller and more rounded than the rear legs.
- 8) Use your shears to trim the rear legs going with the contours of the legs and showing the bend in the stifle.
- 9) Use your shears to make sure the entire body, legs and tail are blended smoothly together.
- 10) Use your shears to round off feet.

**Eleventh Step:**

**FACE/EARS**

- 1) Use your #10 blade to trim the face by combing the hair forward and then trimming ¼ in. starting at the top of the eye (forehead) and going to the base of the skull. Continue trimming from the eye up to the ears and down the cheeks.
- 2) Use your #10 blade and trim the ears cleanly on both sides, going from the base outward..
- 3) Use your shears to neaten up the outside edges of the ears.
- 4) Use your shears to trim the eyebrows into a 'V' shape. Comb forward and then start trimming at the outside corner, going diagonally to the center. At the stop, remove any straggly hair between the eyebrows. Eyebrows should look like small triangles.
- 5) Use your thinning shears to trim straggly hair on the muzzle.
- 6) Use your shears to remove any extra hair from the beard, creating a long, smooth look. Beard is left full, but not bushy.
- 7) Use your thinning shears to remove any extra hair from the beard, creating a long look. Beard is left full, but not bushy. Thin out the line going from the corner of the mouth to the eyebrow so it's straight.



**Twelfth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

# WIREHAired POINTING GRIFFON



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Thinning Shears (for a more natural look) or Curved Shears

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne, ribbon or bandana

**First Step:**

Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Fourth Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Fifth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Sixth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Seventh Step:**

Use your thinning shears and clean up any straggly hair on body, head and cheek.

**Eighth Step:**

Use your thinning shears to trim hair close on the ears.

**Ninth Step:**

Use your shears to even out eyebrows.

**Tenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. You're done!



# YORKSHIRE TERRIER



## Tools Needed

Slicker Brush, Comb, Soft Brush  
Nail Clipper, Straight Shears  
Clipper, #10 blade, #15 or #40 blade  
Small Rubber Bands, Bows

**Additional Items:** Ear cleaner, medicated powder, shampoo, conditioner, spray cologne



**First Step:**

Use medicated powder and lightly use to dry ears. Gently pull out and dead hair. Use cotton balls dampened with ear cleaner to clean the inside of the ears.

**Second Step:**

Use your nail clippers to cut the nails. Cut the tip of the nails being careful not to cut the quick. If you cut the quick, use your gel or powder blood stopper to stop the bleeding.

**Third Step:**

Use your #15 blade (Yvonne prefers #40 blade), on your clipper to remove the hair from between the pads.

**Fourth Step:**

For the sanitary trim, use your #10 blade on your clipper and clip the hair from the rectal area ½" inch on all sides of the rectum. Be careful not to touch the rectum area!

**Fifth Step:**

Use your #10 blade to trim the hair from the groin to the navel.

**Sixth Step:**

Use your slicker brush and brush entire coat thoroughly.

**Seventh Step:****Bath Time**

Use your favorite shampoo.

**Wet** the dog first and then apply the shampoo.

**Shampoo** the dog creating a nice lather on entire body, head, legs, and feet. (Be careful not to get any water inside the ears.)

**Rinse** the dog until lather is completely gone.

**Condition** (if desired) after rinsing, making sure you rinse the conditioner out before drying.

**As part of the dog's bath make sure you:**

Brush teeth to remove food debris.

**Eighth Step:**

After bathing, use a towel to remove any excess water. Then use your blow dryer to dry the dog thoroughly or cage dry.

**Ninth Step:**

Comb and fluff!

**Tenth Step:**

Part the hair down the middle of the back from the top of the head to the base of the tail. Comb hair downward and use your coat dressing to keep part in place. From the

top of the head going down to the tip of the nose, part the hair in the middle and brush on both sides of the muzzle.

**Eleventh Step:**

Use a #10 blade to trim hair from the top ¼ of the ears on both sides. Use your shears to trim the outside edges of the ears.

**Twelfth Step:** Evenly divide the hair on the top of the head from the corner of the eye to the ear. The line from the ears should mirror each other. Wrap a small rubber band around each of the two topknots, fold the top portion down and secure with another wrap of the rubber band. You will be able to wrap the rubber band about four times, total. Check the bands are not too tight. Attach bows on each topknot. Please refer to page on heads for common trim.

**Thirteenth Step:**

Use your shears to round off feet.

**Fourteenth Step:**

Spray coat with conditioner. Comb through. You may also want to lightly spray coat with cologne.

**Final Step:**

Step away from the dog and take a final look at your work to make sure you are satisfied. After completing any finishing touches, place a bandana around the neck if a boy, or a ribbon if a girl. Make sure you compliment the dog on what a good dog they have been, and how handsome or beautiful he or she looks.

Call the owner to have him/her picked up. You're done!

**Make sure to register at [www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com](http://www.MyDogGroomingGuide.com) and  
watch streaming videos on selected dog breeds!**

Airedale – Bedlington - Bichon – Cat – Chow Chow  
Cairn Terrier – Cocker Spaniel - Maltese- Pomeranian  
Poodle – Schnauzer- Scottish Terrier – Shih Tzu  
Westie – Wire Fox Terrier – Yorkie

**Plus You'll Watch These Additional Videos**

Deshed – Hygiene 1 – Hygiene 2

# Glossary

**Against the Grain** – Opposite direction to the way the hair grows

**Anal Glands** - Paired sacs located on either side of the anus

**Base of Ear** – The place where the ear attaches to the head

**Base of Skull** - The place where the skull attaches to the neck

**Clip** – To trim a dog's coat

**Dematting** – To remove tangles from a dog's coat

**Dewclaw** - An unnecessary toe on the back of the leg

**Feathering** - The fringe of hair along the tail and the back of the legs of some dogs

**Flank** - The section of flesh on the body of a person or an animal between the last rib and the hip; the side

**Flew** - Flews are the long part of the upper lip that covers the teeth

**Foreface** - Muzzle

**Fringes** - The fringe of hair along the tail and the back of the legs of some dogs

**Leather** – The ear flap

**Mats** – Tangled hair

**Muzzle** – Nostril, nasal bone, and jaw

**Pads** – Underside of the dog's feet

**Plume** – Feathering left on the tail

**Pompon** – Rounded hair left on a dog's tail or a ankles

**Quick** - The vein located inside the dog's nails

**Stifle** – Dog's knee

**Stop** – The place where the nasal bones meet the skull

**Topknot** – The longer portion of hair on top of the head